

READ AND LISTEN



**REGULAR ENGLISH VERBS AND
MATCHING NOUNS**

**BONUS GRAMMAR, PHRASES, IDIOMS
AND EXPRESSIONS**



BY: GLEN MARTYN HUBBARD

Contents

Introduction.....	2
Audio timestamps.....	5
A.....	6
A grammar section.....	26
B.....	29
B grammar section.....	53
C.....	55
C grammar section	92
D.....	95
D grammar section	119
E.....	122
E grammar section	137
F.....	139
F grammar section	158
G.....	163
G grammar section	173
H.....	175
H grammar section	189
I.....	191
I grammar section	206
J.....	208
J grammar section	214
K.....	215
K grammar section	221
L.....	223
L grammar section	236
M.....	238
M grammar section	254
N.....	257
N grammar section	263
O.....	265
O grammar section	274
P.....	276
P grammar section	311
Q.....	316
Q grammar section	319
R.....	320
R grammar section	350
S.....	354
S grammar section	408
T.....	416
T grammar section	442
U.....	447
U grammar section	452
V.....	453
V grammar section	456
W.....	457
W grammar section	478
X.....	482
X grammar section	484
Y.....	485
Y grammar section	488
Z.....	489
Z grammar section	492
Grammar section index.....	493
Acknowledgements.....	495

Regular Verbs and Matching Nouns **with Bonus Grammar, Phrases, Idioms and Expressions**

Introduction

This book contains over 600 regular English verbs. In it, you'll find the verbs listed in alphabetical order with example sentences to add to your vocabulary and clarify existing knowledge, with explanations of useful grammar, phrases, idioms and expressions to help you build confidence and reach your English learning goals.

As you progress through the pages, you'll see the prepositions and adverbs that commonly follow each verb, and you'll increase your knowledge of common phrasal verbs.

This book provides example sentences (usually 3, but sometimes more) in different tenses. In most cases, the first example uses present simple or present continuous, the second example uses the past simple tense, and the third example uses words like 'going to' and 'will' to indicate the future tense. There is also an online dictionary definition of each verb, which appears like this:

Admire

1. regard with respect or warm approval.
2. look at (something impressive or attractive) with pleasure.

"admire" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+admire> (24 September, 2021)

The dictionary definitions and attributions won't be included in the audio, so feel free to pause the audio and read them if you think they'll help you make sense of the example sentences.

The section under the definitions show the most common ways the verbs are performed – you'll see which prepositions and adverbs are typically used to connect verbs with *someone* or *something*.

Under many of the example sentences you will also find examples of how certain verbs are used in the form of nouns. Like we see under the verb "advise":

Noun: Advice

I have experience dealing with a similar problem. I can give you some advice if you like.

You'll find there are verbs that have the same spelling as the noun, like "fence." In most of these cases, you'll notice that the action of the verb allows you to understand its transformation into a noun. For example, you can **fence** a property (verb) and when you're finished fencing it, you've constructed a **fence** (noun). Even the verbs and nouns that have slightly different spelling (like advise and advice) are quite similar in meaning. For this reason, the dictionary definitions haven't been included for the noun examples.

Nouns are not included on occasions where the meaning is completely different from the verbs. For example, the verb "pine," means a feeling of longing for someone or something, while "pine" (the noun) is a type of wood.

Occasionally you'll find verbs that have multiple meanings have been presented with just one definition. In these cases, it's because I've left out the informal or uncommon usage, and chosen to define the better-known verb instead. Other times you may see two or more definitions with similar meanings, but only one of them applies to the example sentences that are shown, as you can see with the verb 'taste,' where I've only used examples that refer to it in the context of perceiving flavours.

Taste

1. perceive or experience the flavour of.
2. have experience of.

"taste" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+taste+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Taste something

I like to taste a range different foods when I travel.

She tasted the soup to see if it needed more salt.

He's going to eat the lemon cake, and there's no doubt he'll think it tastes very sweet.

Finally, there will be different aspects of grammar, including phrases, idioms and expressions used in the sentences, so I've periodically highlighted some of those and explained them at the end of each letter section. Like this:

Amuse someone

Most clowns amuse most children, but some clowns are just downright scary.

(and then you'll see the highlighted word or expression explained at the end of the set of verbs, like this):

downright scary

The use of the word 'downright' is appropriate in cases where you wish to emphasise the thorough degree to which some quality, characteristic or action is unpleasant.

She's a downright pest.

That government is downright corrupt.

He's downright greedy.

The player is a downright liability to the team.

You may find that some of the paragraphs describing the grammar use language that's a little difficult to understand, so feel free to go straight to the *italicised* examples – best efforts have been made to ensure the context is quite clear, and with enough repetition you'll be confident of when and how to apply them.

Please take a look and try to read from the list daily, ideally speaking out loud. It will help improve and reinforce your vocabulary, and give you more confidence when speaking English. As this is a book that comes with parallel audio, you can also listen as you read, or listen to the audio separately to improve your understanding of the correct pronunciation. If you are the purchaser of this book, you will have received instructions on how to access the audio files in your email. If you're having trouble accessing them, please let me know at contact@gmhenglish.com and they'll be made available to you.

I wish you well in your English learning journey, and look forward to hearing how this book worked for you.

Audio Timestamps – (H = Highlighted Bonus Section)

INTRO	7 seconds		
A 4.35	AH 20.38	N 3.35.28	NH 3.38.56
B 24.08	BH 43.13	O 3.41.06	OH 3.46.27
C 46.29	CH 1.16.39	P 3.48.50	PH 4.15.47
D 1.24.13	DH 1.42.25	Q 4.23.30	QH 4.24.59
E 1.46.25	EH 1.58.26	R 4.25.54	RH 4.50.04
F 2.01.27	FH 2.15.52	S 4.56.41	SH 5.36.15
G 2.22.48	GH 2.29.35	T 5.48.44	TH 6.09.04
H 2.32.45	HH 2.42.55	U 6.16.40	UH 6.19.19
I 2.44.39	IH 2.55.31	V 6.20.41	VH 6.21.27
J 2.58.53	JH 3.02.31	W 6.22.20	WH 6.39.15
K 3.03.28	KH 3.06.59	X 6.44.40	XH 6.45.11
L 3.09.37	LH 3.18.32	Y 6.45.57	YH 6.46.59
M 3.21.16	MH 3.31.53	Z 6.47.51	ZH 6.49.00

A



Accept

1. consent to receive or undertake (something offered).
2. believe or come to recognize (a proposition) as valid or correct.

“accept” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+accept+meaning> (24 September, 2021)

Accept someone or something (physical or abstract)

I have to accept that my football team will not win many games this year.

The community members were very friendly. They accepted him **with open arms.**

I’m going to the shop to buy some ice cream. I want chocolate flavoured ice cream, but I will accept strawberry or vanilla if chocolate is sold out.

Noun: Acceptance

She was suspicious of the traveller, but he worked hard and finally proved to be a reliable worker worthy of her acceptance.

Add

1. join (something) to something else so as to increase the size, number, or amount.
2. put in (an additional element, ingredient, etc.).

“add” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+add> (24 September, 2021)

Add something / someone to something else

She adds a can of soup to her shopping list every Wednesday.

We added 4 seeds to the garden.

The event organiser will add him to the list of guest speakers.

Admire

3. regard with respect or warm approval.
4. look at (something impressive or attractive) with pleasure.

"admire" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+admire> (24 September, 2021)

Admire someone or something

He admires her resilience.

She admired his courage.

I'll tell you about the person I admire most.

Noun: Admiration

I have a lot of admiration for people who stay positive and recover after many setbacks.

Admit

1. confess to be true or to be the case.
2. allow (someone) to enter a place.

"admit" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+admit> (24 September, 2021)

Admit something (to reveal it)

Admit someone or something to something (like an event)

I thought hiking would be boring, but I have to admit, I really enjoy it.

She knew she was at fault, so she admitted to her mistake.

The man is bleeding from the head. He needs to be admitted to hospital.

Noun: Admission

1. The police told the suspect that they consider his decision to remain silent an admission of guilt.
2. We couldn't gain admission to the concert without tickets, and we couldn't get tickets because the event sold out so fast.

Advise

1. offer suggestions about the best course of action to someone.
2. recommend.
3. inform (someone) about a fact or situation in a formal or official way.

"advise" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+advise+meaning> (24 September, 2021)

Advise someone to do something

Advise someone

I advise you to eat fresh, healthy food, and exercise regularly if you want to stay **in good shape**.

The delivery truck was delayed, so the manager advised the customers to return in the morning.

The girl working at the cinema was advised by her boss to sell more movie tickets instead of telling people to go home and watch Netflix.

Noun: Advice

The old man told the young man, "I'll give you some free advice. Treat your children well if you don't want them to put you in a retirement home!"

Afford

1. have enough money to pay for.

2. provide or supply (an opportunity or facility).

“afford” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+afford> (24 September, 2021)

Afford something

Afford to buy something

Can you afford to buy me a new house?

I can't afford to buy a new Tesla. I don't have enough money.

If I get a job promotion, I'll be able to afford a new camera.

She needs to get good results on her exam, so she can't afford to make a mistake.

Agree

1. have the same opinion about something; concur.
2. say that one will do something which has been suggested by another person.

“agree” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+agree> (24 September, 2021)

Agree to do something

Agree on / to something (like a topic / idea / deal)

If I agree to mow the lawn, will you agree to wash my car?

We agreed to buy a dog from the rescue shelter.

They have had ongoing disputes recently, but I think they'll agree to a new deal on Wednesday.

Noun: Agreement

The teacher suggested that he may have made the assignment too difficult, and most of the students nodded in agreement.

Alert

1. warn (someone) of a danger or problem.

“alert” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+alert> (24 September, 2021)

Alerted to something

Alert someone / some group

There is a fire burning out of control. You alert the authorities and I'll alert the community.

We were unaware of an approaching hurricane for most of the day. Luckily the alarm system and the evening news report alerted us to the danger.

There's been some robberies in the area recently. I'll alert my neighbours to any suspicious activity if I see it.

Noun: Alert

We have to be on the alert while driving on busy roads.

Allow

1. let (someone) have or do something.
2. give the necessary time or opportunity for.

“allow” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+allow> (24 September, 2021)

Allow someone to do something

Allow something to do something

My brother allows his dog to sleep on his bed.

Are Australians allowed to work in New Zealand without a visa?

Her parents told her she was not allowed to leave her room, but she snuck out and went to the cinema anyway.

They're allowing 10 people inside the cafe.

Allow me to introduce myself.

Noun: Allowance

Normally I don't let anyone use my camera, but since you're determined to be a photographer I'll make an allowance.

Amuse

1. cause (someone) to find something funny.
2. provide interesting and enjoyable occupation for (someone); entertain.

"allow" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+amuse> (24 September, 2021)

Amuse someone

Most clowns amuse most children, but some clowns are just downright scary.

The comedian amused the crowd with some interesting stories, but I didn't think he was very funny.

The dogs at the dog show will amuse the crowd.

Noun: Amusement

I looked up at the night sky and watched in amusement as hundreds of stars twinkled and the moon shone bright.

Analyse

1. examine (something) methodically and in detail, typically in order to explain and interpret it.
2. psychoanalyse (someone).

“analyse” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+analyse> (24 September, 2021)

Analyse something / someone

Some doctors analyse human behaviour so they can assess their patients' health.

I'm analysing a report as part of a criminal investigation.

The scientists analysed the data and made a surprising discovery.

She's going to analyse the video footage of her technique in order to see if changes need to be made.

Noun: Analysis

A detailed analysis of the government's spending records showed evidence of corruption.

Announce

1. make a formal public statement about a fact, occurrence, or intention.

“announce” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+announce> (24 September, 2021)

Announce something

Announce someone has done something

The presenter stands on the stage and announces the name of the winner at the end of the show.

The company is announcing the new CEO (Chief Executive Officer) at the board meeting next month.

We announced our engagement last year and we're very excited to be getting married.

Noun: Announcement

I have an announcement to make. I'm quitting my job and going to India do a 2-month silent meditation retreat.

Annoy

1. make (someone) a little angry; irritate.

"annoy" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+annoy> (24 September, 2021)

Annoy someone

He annoys me while I'm trying to study – I can never get any work done.

The neighbours continue to annoy me. They're doing renovations and the noise is too loud.

The customer annoyed the staff member by making constant and unreasonable demands.

Noun: Annoyance

She was tired of his interruptions throughout the meeting. Her colleagues agreed that he was an annoyance.

Answer

1. say or write something as a reaction to someone or something.
2. act in reaction to (a sound such as a phone ringing or a knock or ring on a door).

“answer” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+answer> (24 September, 2021)

Answer a question

I don't care if you have an urgent question, I don't answer people who are rude to me.

We're not answering any of your questions, because you quoted our statement out of context and smeared our reputation.

The journalist asked me a question, and I answered it.

Noun: Answer

I just want someone to give me the answer so I can finish my exam.

Apologise

1. express regret for something that one has done wrong.

“apologise” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+apologise> (24 September, 2021)

Apologise for something Apologise to someone

He apologises for burping during dinnertime.

The committee is apologising for trying to bribe the government officials.

We apologised for sending the wrong information on the invitation cards, but some of our guests didn't forgive us.

If you want to be invited here again you will have to apologise for riding my bike without my permission.

Noun: Apology

Your apology is not accepted because I don't believe you're truly sorry.

Applaud

1. show approval or praise by clapping.
2. show strong approval of (a person or action); praise.

“applaud” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+applaud> (24 September, 2021)

Applaud someone / something for doing something

I applaud the rescue team for working so hard free the trapped animal.

You shouldn't be applauding the success of that business; they make most of their money through organised crime.

They applauded the performers for putting on an amazing show.

Noun: Applause

The fans went crazy for their favourite band – the sound of the applause was deafening.

Appear

1. come into sight; become visible or noticeable, especially without apparent cause.
2. seem; give the impression of being.

“appear” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+appear> (24 September, 2021)

To appear (from somewhere)

Appears to be / appears as if / appears as though / appears that = seems like

She appears in my dreams whenever I eat cheese pizza for dinner.

It appears that I'm the last person remaining in the competition. I guess I'm the winner!

Look! There's an image appearing in the distance!

We're going to be appearing in the next season of You've Got Talent. Unfortunately we'll just be sitting in the crowd.

Noun: Appearance

They hosts were happy with the number of people who came to the event, but they were a little upset that one of their closest friends was too busy and therefore not able to make an appearance.

Appreciate

1. recognize the full worth of.
2. understand (a situation) fully; grasp the full implications of.

"appreciate" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+appreciate> (24 September, 2021)

Appreciate someone / something

I appreciate the help that people have given me because I wouldn't have had any success without their support.

I find myself appreciating nature more than I did in the past.

The athlete appreciated her rivals and trainers because she knew she needed strong competition and encouragement to stay motivated and achieve good results.

Noun: Appreciation

There is a strong sense of appreciation for the volunteers who helped rebuild the town.

Approve

1. officially agree to or accept as satisfactory.

“approve” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+approve> (24 September, 2021)

Approve of someone / something

Do you approve of the government’s decision to cut funding to the Arts?

She approved the application so the project could proceed.

I can’t believe the local council approved the construction of another apartment building. Surely a beautiful park would’ve been more appropriate.

Noun: Approval

Not everyone was in agreement that the project should continue, but approval was given once a majority of the voters were in favour of it.

Argue

1. give reasons or cite evidence in support of an idea, action, or theory, typically with the aim of persuading others to share one's view.
2. exchange or express diverging or opposite views, typically in a heated or angry way.

“argue” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+argue> (24 September, 2021)

Argue someone

Argue over something

Argue about something with someone

Argue with someone about something

Argue (in favour of) a case / position / idea / proposal etc.

Argue for / against something

A lawyer argues for his or her client in court.

I don't feel like arguing about who should do the chores right now, I'm too tired.

Some nasty words were said when the couple argued over what to watch on TV.

I'm going to argue with the manager if I have to wait in line for another 15 minutes.

Noun: Argument

The meat eater and the vegetarian got into a heated argument over the ethics of eating meat.

Arrange

1. put (things) in a neat, attractive, or required order.
2. organize or make plans for (a future event).

"arrange" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+arrange> (24 September, 2021)

Arrange something or some things

Arrange something or some things for someone or some group

Arrange for something (to take place, or be a certain way)

She arranges the accommodation, while he arranges the transportation.

We're arranging an event that requires a lot of planning and permits.

You haven't arranged for any flowers to be at the wedding!

They're going to arrange for a limousine to pick up their guest.

Noun: Arrangement

A large arrangement of stalls were set up so that all the vendors could sell their products.

Arrest

1. seize (someone) by legal authority and take them into custody.
2. stop or check (progress or a process).

“arrest” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+arrested> (24 September, 2021)

Arrest someone

It's the job of the police to protect the community and arrest criminals. Views on how well they do this vary wildly depending on which community you ask.

The police are arresting the suspect **as we speak**.

His cousin was arrested for possession of an illegal substance.

The guilty person will be arrested and charged.

Noun: Arrest

The investigation led to his arrest.

Arrive

1. reach a place at the end of a journey or a stage in a journey.
2. (of an event or a particular moment) happen or come.

“arrive” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+arrive> (24 September, 2021)

Arrive to / at / in somewhere

Arrive somewhere at a certain or approximate time

She arrives on time, every time. She's very punctual.

They're expected to arrive at the mountaintop at 2:30pm.

We arrived in the city an hour ago, but it took us a while to find a parking space.

You're going to arrive at the stadium half an hour after the start of the game.

Noun: Arrival

He thought his late arrival was not a problem, but his friends were quite annoyed that they had to wait for him.

Ask

1. say something in order to obtain an answer or some information.
2. say to (someone) that one wants them to do or give something.

"ask" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+ask> (24 September, 2021)

Ask (about) someone or something **Ask someone something**

Can I ask you to do me a favour?

You don't have to ask me if you're allowed to take a toilet break.

I'm asking you politely, can I please drive your Lamborghini?

They don't seem interested in learning, because they haven't asked any questions.

I'm not going to ask the diners if they're enjoying their tacos. I can see they're enjoying their meal and they won't appreciate being interrupted.

Attach

1. join or fasten (something) to something else.
2. attribute importance or value to.

“attach” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+attach> (24 September, 2021)

Attach something to something Attached to someone or something

We attach the GoPro mount to the motorcycle tank using tape.

You are emotionally attached to your pet.

I will attach the file and send the email as soon as possible.

Noun: Attachment

The man formed an emotional attachment to his dog.

Attack

1. take aggressive military action against (a place or enemy forces) with weapons or armed force.
2. criticize or oppose fiercely and publicly.

“attack” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+attack> (24 September, 2021)

Attack someone / something

Have you ever seen a lion attack a zebra?

The police attacked the protesters, but the police officers said the protesters attacked first.

People will continue to attack others online if there’s no punishment for their behaviour.

Noun: Attack

The attack on the building happened at around midnight and caused irreparable damage.

Attempt

1. make an effort to achieve or complete (something difficult).

“attempt” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+attempt> (24 September, 2021)

Attempt something

Attempt to do something

I’ve made several attempts to hit a golf ball straight, but I always hit it left or right.

He attempted to make a cheesecake, but he left it in the oven too long.

The marathon runner is attempting to win her **third straight** race.

“I will attempt to jump 12 buses on a motorcycle,” the stuntman told the crowd.

Noun: Attempt

“I don’t expect everyone to pass the exam, but I expect everyone to make an attempt,” the teacher said to his students.

Attend

1. be present at (an event, meeting, or function).
2. deal with.

“attend” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+attend> (24 September, 2021)

Attend something

We hope we have the chance to attend our daughter’s graduation.

Will you be attending the sporting function next week?

She attended the fancy dinner party with her boyfriend.

I am quite busy this evening. I will do some laboratory research for work, then I'll attend an art exhibition before going to see a football match.

Noun: Attendance

I asked each club member to let me know if they were coming to the annual meeting, then I let the planning committee know how many people would be in attendance on the night.

Attract

1. cause to come to a place or participate in a venture by offering something of interest or advantage.

"attract" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+attract> (24 September, 2021)

Attract someone or something

Attract someone or something to someone or something

Being able to attract anyone at any time would be a pretty cool superpower.

The bribery allegations didn't attract a lot of attention in the media because the story was overshadowed by a terrorist attack.

If you study something like botany or biology, you'll learn that sweet, sugary scents attract bees.

Noun: Attraction

The couple were once in love, but now there's no feeling of attraction remaining.

Avoid

1. keep away from or stop oneself from doing (something).

“avoid” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+avoid> (24 September, 2021)

Avoid someone

Avoid doing something

You can take a short break while we continue our investigation, but you can't delay the process much longer. You can't avoid the questions forever.

I might not come to school today, because I'm trying to avoid a bully.

Are you avoiding my question because you're afraid of how I'll respond to your answer?

What steps are we going to **put in place** to avoid another pandemic?

Noun: Avoidance

His avoidance of the issue suggests there's something embarrassing he's trying to hide.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

with open arms

To embrace/greet/accept someone or some situation 'with open arms' is to embrace/greet/accept in a way that shows warmth and hospitality, intended to allow the recipient to feel as comfortable and secure as possible. Some other examples in which we hear 'with' are:

It's with a heavy heart we gather here today. = We've come together under sad circumstances.

He's not without a chance. = He has a chance.

I mean this with the best of intentions. = I hope what I'm about to say serves you well.

With the deepest of sympathies. = The deepest possible sympathy is felt.

in good shape

To refer to someone as 'in good shape' means they're healthy, and implies that obvious physical signs of fitness are clear for all to see, or that better signs of health – compared to their previous lack of health – are now present. We often simply say 'in shape.' A situation or a plan can also be in good shape, meaning a sense of progress or stability is felt, relative to the range of outcomes possible.

He's been in pretty good shape because he started working out.

I started to get in shape after I eliminated bread from my diet.

The project suffered some early setbacks, but it's recovered nicely to be in good shape.

No-one expected this team to do very well, but they fought hard and are in good shape going into the final round of the tournament.

downright scary

The use of the word 'downright' is appropriate in cases where you wish to emphasise the thorough degree to which some quality, characteristic or action is unpleasant.

She's a downright pest.

That government is downright corrupt.

He's downright greedy.

The player is a downright liability to the team.

as we speak

To put a personal pronoun or noun + a verb before 'as' and a personal pronoun after 'as' (and not include a comma) is to show that two or more things are happening at the same time.

The rocket blasted into space as the astronauts held onto their seats.

We closed the door of the car as the driver pulled away from the curb.

My mum likes to sing rock 'n' roll songs as she's baking cookies.

The cricket team celebrated as their defeated opponents walked off the ground, disappointed.

third straight race

When we use a number or an ordinal number (first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth... etc.) followed by 'straight' + noun, we're saying that's how many times the noun has resulted 'in a row' (or consecutively). It can also be used to signal the duration of a verb.

She won her third straight gold medal.

They'd been digging for four straight hours.

The man ate his fifth straight chocolate bar and started to feel dizzy.

My cousin rode his bicycle for 2 days straight, stopping only for a drink.

steps put in place

To 'put steps in place' or 'have steps put in place' means the multiple parts required of a process have been organised to maximise the chance of successful completion.

Steps have been put in place to make sure the President arrives safely.

We're a little worried that the weather might ruin the reunion, but steps are being put in place to provide shelter in the event of heavy rain.

She's annoyed with the behaviour of the naughty children, so she's going to put steps in place to deter the offending troublemakers.

It's necessary for hospital administrators to put steps in place to ensure people can easily find the carpark and emergency department.

B



Back

1. give financial, material, or moral support to.

“back” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+back> (25 September, 2021)

Back someone

Back over / into something (phrasal verbs) (to go over or into something in the process of moving backwards)

Back down (phrasal verb) (to surrender your opinion / position)

The sergeant backed his troops to win the battle.

Who are you backing to win the game this afternoon?

She backed her favourite basketball team to win the match, but they still lost despite her support.

He reversed his car and backed over his son’s toy. The toy was completely destroyed.

She backed into a street sign and damaged the rear of her car.

I’ll have to back out of the driveway carefully because the driveway is quite narrow.

Bake

1. cook (food) by dry heat without direct exposure to a flame, typically in an oven.
2. (of the sun or other agency) subject (something) to dry heat, especially so as to harden it.

“bake” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=bake+meaning> (25 September, 2021)

Bake something

I can't bake apple pies this weekend, because my oven isn't working.

The churchgoers decided to bake pies for the fundraiser.

She put the cookies in the oven and baked them for 50 minutes.

I'm going to bake a casserole later today.

Balance

1. put (something) in a steady position so that it does not fall.
2. offset or compare the value of (one thing) with another.

"balance" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=balance+meaning> (25 September, 2021)

Balance something

Balance on something

Can you balance on a beam, or do you fall off every time?

Can you balance as well as a gymnast?

I'm balancing as I walk over a rickety bridge, but I think I'm **about to** fall.

The kids will try to balance the seesaw so they can stay suspended in the air.

Noun: Balance

I thought I could maintain my balance, but I slipped and fell.

Ban

1. officially or legally prohibit (something).

“ban” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+ban> (25 September, 2021)

Ban something / someone

The manager has the authority to ban abusive people from the club.

Some countries are banning the use of carbon-based fuels in order to help the environment.

I haven't been banned from the country, I just need to apply for a new visa.

If she uses the stage as a political platform she will be banned from the conference.

Noun: Ban

“I'm upset because I received a lifetime ban from my favourite sports stadium.”

“Why?”

“I lit some firecrackers on one of the basketball courts to celebrate my team's win. The stadium owners kicked me out and told me never to return.”

Bang

1. strike or put down (something) forcefully and noisily.

“bang” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bang> (25 September, 2021)

Bang something

Bang on something

Bang into something

Bang on (phrasal verb X2) (1: to talk too much about something. 2: to be correct / on target)

Sometimes I lose my temper while I'm stuck in traffic, and I bang my fist on the steering wheel.

The kids like to bang into each other while driving dodgem cars at the amusement park.

The straight A student said she'd bang her head against the wall if she fails the exam, but I think she was exaggerating.

I can't sleep because the neighbours are fighting and banging on the walls.

He is an exceptional player, but I wish he wouldn't bang on about all of his achievements. It makes him seem quite egotistical.

Her bold declaration was initially laughed at, but new evidence reveals she was bang on all along.

The kicker had some difficult shots on goal, but was bang on target every time.

Noun: Bang

I lost my hearing when I stood next to some fireworks. I think I also suffered concussion, because I have very little memory of the incident. The last thing I remember was hearing a loud bang, and when I woke up I was in hospital.

Bare

1. uncover (a part of the body or other thing) and expose it to view.

"bare" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bare> (25 September, 2021)

Bare something

He bared his chest to show his tattoo.

She bared her soul to the audience, and they respected and admired her for it.

If I'm going to bare my skin at the beach, I'll have to wear sunscreen.

Bat

1. (of a sports team or player) take the role of hitting rather than throwing the ball.
2. hit at (someone or something) with the flat of one's hand.

"bat" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bat> (25 September, 2021)

Bat (in a game)

Bat something

I don't want to bowl in the cricket game today, but I would like to bat.

I've been batting this mop against a wall for an hour, but it's still covered in dust.

She batted her eyelids in an effort to seduce him.

If he continues batting like this, he's going to be a champion player.

Noun: Bat (X2) (1: an instrument for hitting a ball in a sport. 2: an animal)

He hit the ball with his bat.

Bats can't see, but they have a great sense of hearing.

Bath

1. wash (someone) while immersing them in a bath.

"bath" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bath> (25 September, 2021)

Bath oneself / someone else

I like to bath in the bathtub when I stay in nice hotel rooms.

The nurse had to start bathing the elderly gentleman because he could no longer do it himself.

They campers bathed in the river then dried off, got dressed, and collected wood for the campfire.

Noun: Bath

The nurse filled the bath with water and liquid soap.

Battle

1. struggle tenaciously to achieve or resist something.

“battle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+battle> (25 September, 2021)

Battle someone / something

I battle my rivals in a video game. Sometimes I win and sometimes I lose.

The married couple are battling over which school their kids should go to.

She'll give her brother the last cookie in the pantry, **on the condition** that he not battle when she requests more time on the computer.

Noun: Battle

The soldiers declared that they had lost the battle, but would win the war.

Beam

1. transmit (a radio signal or broadcast) in a specified direction.
2. (of a light or light source) shine brightly.

“beam” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+beam> (25 September, 2021)

Beam something

I beam myself into space in my dreams.

She beamed the laser onto the barcode to determine the price of the product.

They’re going to beam themselves from this world into the next with a new type of technology.

Noun: Beam

I was blinded after being struck in the eye by a laser beam.

Beg

1. ask someone earnestly or humbly for something.
2. ask for food or money as charity.

“beg” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+beg> (25 September, 2021)

Beg for something

I hope I never have to get down on my knees and beg for food. It’s very sad that anyone has to ask for basic necessities to survive.

I’m begging for this movie to end soon. It’s so long and boring.

He felt guilty about his actions in the past and begged for forgiveness for his crimes.

Noun: Beggar

The beggar on the street corner held a cup in front of him and kindly asked the passing pedestrians if they could spare any change.

Behave

1. act or conduct oneself in a specified way, especially towards others.
2. conduct oneself in accordance with the accepted norms of a society or group.

“behave” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+behave> (25 September, 2021)

Behave (in a particular way)

Almost all jobs require people to behave respectfully in the workplace, and don't take too kindly to workers **goofing around**.

“I'm behaving well because I want Santa to bring me some good presents,” the boy said.

He's not behaving well – he's always grumpy when he hasn't had enough sleep.

The students behaved very poorly. They screamed and shouted during the class and showed the teacher no respect.

Noun: Behaviour

She received bad news yet acted very professionally. He was impressed with her behaviour.

Belong

1. be the property of.
2. be a member of (a particular group or organization).

“belong” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+belong> (25 September, 2021)

Belong to something
Belong with someone / something

I don't belong in the desert. I'm more suited to the cold weather.

They used to own a red car, but it doesn't belong to them anymore.

The couple found a wallet on the highway of a small, country town. The police station was closed, so they decided to knock on the front door of every home in the town until they discovered who the wallet belonged to.

Noun: Belongings

I couldn't pack all of my belongings into my suitcase, so some of them will be left in storage.

Bleach

1. cause (a material such as cloth, paper, or hair) to become white or much lighter by a chemical process or by exposure to sunlight.
2. clean or sterilize (a drain, sink, etc.) with bleach.

"bleach" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=bleach+meaning> (25 September, 2021)

Bleach something

I don't want to bleach my hair, I like my hair dark.

Some companies are working on ways to bleach and brighten clothing.

I'm not sure about how the process works, but I know the Great Barrier Reef has experienced bleaching of the corals. I believe it's called "coral bleaching" for this reason.

Noun: Bleach

I'm going to clean my clothes with bleach.

Bless

1. pronounce words in a religious rite in order to confer or invoke divine favour upon; ask God to look favourably on.

“bless” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bless> (25 September, 2021)

Bless someone

The priest blessed the child as part of the baptism.

“You have my blessing to marry my daughter,” the man told his daughter’s boyfriend.

The old, sick man was content and ready for death. He said he had no regrets and had been blessed with a long, full, happy life.

Noun: Blessing

The 70 year old man was clearly grateful to be surrounded by family and friends on his birthday. “It is such a blessing to be here with all of you today,” he told them.

Blind

1. cause (someone) to be unable to see, permanently or temporarily.
2. deprive (someone) of understanding, judgement, or perception.

“blind” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+blind+meaning> (25 September, 2021)

To go blind

To blind someone or some creature

If you stare directly at the sun, you might go blind.

The light shone into her eyes and blinded her.

The thick fog blinded the truck drivers and caused them to have an accident.

I'll probably go blind if don't wear sunglasses to protect my eyes.

Noun: Blind

I can't see, because I'm blind.

Blink

1. shut and open the eyes quickly.
2. (of a light) flash on and off in a regular or intermittent way.

"blink" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+blink> (25 September, 2021)

To blink (deliberately, unconsciously, or involuntarily)

It's hard not to blink if you're driving and a bug flies into your windscreen.

She blinked several times when some dust went into her eyes.

I'm going to ask you a question, but I don't want the person behind you to know your answer, so please blink once for "yes" and twice for "no".

Blush

1. show shyness, embarrassment, or shame by becoming red in the face.

"blink" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+blush+meaning> (25 September, 2021)

To blush (due to embarrassment or nervousness)

I blush whenever I stand in front of a crowd.

She blushed because she was embarrassed to be honoured so publicly.

Thanks to the public speaking lessons he's been taking, he's confident he won't blush when it's his turn to address the team.

Boast

1. talk with excessive pride and self-satisfaction about one's achievements, possessions, or abilities.
2. (of a person, place, or thing) possess (a feature that is a source of pride).

"boast" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+boast> (27 September, 2021)

Boast about something

Boasting about your achievements is not an admirable quality. You will endear yourself to others by remaining humble.

He boasted that he'd won many awards.

"I've sold 70 cookies today," the little girl told her mother. "I'm not boasting, just giving you the facts," she added, with a big smile.

Boil

1. (with reference to a liquid) reach or cause to reach the temperature at which it bubbles and turns to vapour.
2. (with reference to food) cook or be cooked by immersing in boiling water or stock.

"boil" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+boil+meaning> (27 September, 2021)

Boil something

If you allow water to reach 100 degrees Celsius it will boil.

She boiled the water so her coffee would be hot.

(Expression:) "The car salesman isn't offering me a warranty for the car," the man said. "He's going to make my blood boil!"

Bolt

1. fasten (a door or window) with a bar that slides into a socket.

"bolt" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bolt> (27 September, 2021)

Bolt something

Bolt something onto something

I bolt pieces of wood together when I do woodworking projects.

She bolted the two pieces of wood together by putting bolts through the holes in the wood and then screwing nuts onto the bolts.

We will bolt his mouth shut if he doesn't stop talking about all the awards he's won!

Noun: Bolt

A carpenter or builder must have knowledge of how to use nuts and bolts.

Bomb

1. attack (a place or object) with a bomb or bombs.

"bomb" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bomb+meaning> (27 September, 2021)

Bomb something

"I get very angry at people who manipulate and exploit others, but I would never bomb their home. I'm innocent!" the suspect told the police officers.

The military planted explosives and bombed the enemy territory.

I predict that companies will continue to work with governments to bomb foreign land and take natural resources.

Noun: Bomb For every bomb that is directed at hostile targets, many more innocent lives are taken. Violence only breeds more violence.

Book (x2)

1. reserve (accommodation, a place, etc.); buy (a ticket) in advance.

"book" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+book+meaning> (27 September, 2021)

Book something

2. make an official note of the personal details of (a person who has broken a law or rule).

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+book+meaning> (27 September, 2021)

Book someone

I don't like to book my accommodation if the departure date is still more than a month away.

We booked a flight and hotel accommodation through the travel company's website.

The police officer is going to book him for parking illegally.

Noun: Book

It'll be a long journey. Take a book to read while travelling on the plane.

Bore (x2)

1. to cause to feel weariness and restlessness through lack of interest : to cause to feel boredom

"bore" Merriam Webster. (Entry 6)

<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/bore> (27 September, 2021)

Bore someone or some group

2. make (a hole) in something with a tool or by digging.

"bore" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bore> (27 September, 2021)

Bore something

It's easy for a crowd to grow bored when watching a show that isn't interesting, informative, or exciting.

He's bored because he can't think of anything to do.

They'll use the excavator to bore a hole in the ground.

Noun: Bore

I can't listen to this guy talk for another minute. He has nothing funny or interesting or insightful to say. He is such a bore.

Borrow

1. take and use (something belonging to someone else) with the intention of returning it.

“borrow” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+borrow> (27 September, 2021)

Borrow something

I have I library card, so I can borrow books from the library.

They borrowed a lot of money and never paid it back. The lenders were very angry and considered taking legal action.

My brother is going to make a tiny home. He has most of the materials he needs, but he’s going to borrow some power tools from a friend to put the materials together.

Bounce

1. (with reference to an object, especially a ball) move quickly up, back, or away from a surface after hitting it.
2. jump repeatedly up and down, typically on something springy.

“bounce” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bounce> (27 September, 2021)

Bounce something

Bounce (+ preposition of place + a / an / the noun)

I like to bounce a bouncy ball before rolling it along the carpet for my dog to chase.

She bounced the ball onto the ground and it bounced away from her, and onto the road in front of oncoming traffic.

He’s going to hurt himself if he keeps bouncing on the unsafe trampoline.

Bow

1. to bend the head, body, or knee in reverence, submission, or shame
2. to incline the head or body in salutation or assent or to acknowledge applause
"bow" Merriam Webster. (Numbers 2 and 3, of entry 1 of 6)
<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/bow> (27 September, 2021)

Bow to someone or something **Bow for someone or something**

Which cultures demand that people bow when meeting dignitaries, or respected elders?

He's in trouble because he bowed incorrectly and couldn't explain why he made the mistake.

We're going to have to bow when meeting the king.

Box

1. put in or provide with a box.

"box" Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+box> (27 September, 2021)

Box someone

Boxed in (phrasal verb) (in a physical or metaphorical sense, to be put in a place where one is surrounded, and cannot move)

I can't think of any sane person who would like to box a professional boxer in the street.

The lawyer's questions boxed the accused man into a corner from which he could not escape, so he confessed to committing the crime.

She's going to box the item so it can be mailed.

Noun: Box

The removalists picked up the boxes and loaded them into the truck, then drove to another house to unload and unpack them.

Brake

1. make a moving vehicle slow down or stop by using a brake.

"brake" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+brake> (27 September, 2021)

To brake

I couldn't brake while riding my bicycle when I was a child, because my fingers couldn't reach the levers.

He braked in his car when the traffic lights changed from green to amber.

We're not going to win the car race unless we can brake, turn, and accelerate better than the other team.

Noun: Brake

In a manual car, the brake is in the middle and the clutch is on the left.

Branch

1. (of a road or path) divide into one or more subdivisions.
2. (of a tree or plant) bear or send out branches.

"branch" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+branch> (27 September, 2021)

Branch (+ preposition of place + a direction or path)

Through my window I see a tree that branches over the roof of another house.

She was bored with her job and needed some new skills, so she branched out to friends in different industries to see what jobs were available.

We branched into a new market after exploring options for growth in the company, but two of our new partners are locked in a legal battle.

Noun: Branch

When I was a child, my brothers and I would climb trees and swing from the branches.

Breathe

1. take air into the lungs and then expel it, especially as a regular physiological process.

“breathe” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+breathe> (27 September, 2021)

Breathe (in / out)

I can't breathe under water, nor can any other human, to my knowledge.

She liked living in the mountains because she liked breathing clean air and drinking clean water.

You'll notice that you can calm down in moments of anger if you remember breathe slowly, deliberately and repeatedly.

Noun: Breath

I can hold my breath under water for about 1 and a half minutes.

Bruise

1. inflict a bruise or bruises on (a part of the body).

“breathe” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bruise+meaning> (27 September, 2021)

Bruise someone / some plant or animal

I once rode my bike into the back of a parked car. I was lucky I didn't bruise any part of my body.

She bruised her leg when she slid into the goalpost during soccer training.

They'll be bruised and battered if they get into the cage with the lion.

Noun: Bruise

His shoulder was punched and two days later you could see a bruise.

Brush

1. remove (dust or dirt) by sweeping or scrubbing.
2. touch something lightly and gently.

“brush” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+brush> (27 September, 2021)

Brush someone or something

Brush up against something or someone (phrasal verb) (to pass by and lightly touch someone or something)

Brush over something (phrasal verb x2) (1: to literally pass over something while touching lightly. 2: to be flippant about something, to disregard it)

My hair is quite short, so I don't need to brush it in the morning.

She brushed her hair because it was frazzled and tangled and she needed it to look neat and straight.

“Who’s going to brush the horse before it competes in the show tomorrow?” the horse owner asked the trainers.

Noun: Brush

The brush was too small for her long hair. She would need to find a bigger, stronger brush to untangle the knots in her hair.

Bump

1. knock or run into someone or something with a jolt.
2. move or travel with a succession of jolting movements.

“breathe” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bruise+meaning> (27 September, 2021)

Bump something or someone

Bump up (phrasal verb) (to be bumped up is to be elevated in a queue or a waiting list)

Bump into someone (phrasal verb x2) (1: to bump someone, typically accidentally. 2: to see someone coincidentally)

I hate it when I bump my head. It really hurts.

She stood up and bumped her head on the corner of the door of the benchtop, which had come open unexpectedly.

We got bumped up to first class seats on the plane. It was awesome!

He bumped into an old friend on the train. They chatted for over half an hour and made plans to meet again **in the not too distant future**.

Noun: Bump

There are a few bumps in the road. If you have to drive over them, please do it safely.

Burn

1. (of a fire) produce flames and heat while consuming a material such as coal or wood.
2. destroy, damage, or injure by heat or fire.

“burn” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+burn> (27 September, 2021)

Burn something

Burned by someone (idiom) (to be emotionally hurt and / or scammed by someone)

I should stop asking for an extra hot coffee, because I often burn my lips when I take a sip.

He burned the roast pork because it was left in the oven too long.

We’re not getting burned like we did on the last trip; on our last trip we rented a car over the phone and the sales representative said we’d get a fast and reliable sportscar, but we were given an old, rusty car that broke down after 2 days.

Noun: Burns

Her leg suffered 2nd degree burns in the house fire.

Bury

1. put or hide underground.
2. cover (someone or something) completely.

“bury” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+bury> (27 September, 2021)

Bury someone or something

The groundskeeper of a cemetery helps dig the holes in which dead people will be buried.

He doesn’t want to be buried, he wants to be cremated.

She'll probably bury the evidence to avoid being caught for her crime.

Noun: Burial

In accordance with the family's wishes, the burial will take place in three days' time.

Buzz

1. make a low, continuous humming sound.
2. move quickly or busily.

"buzz" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+buzz> (27 September, 2021)

Buzz

Get buzzed (idiom) (to get slightly drunk)

Buzz someone (phrasal verb) (to get someone's attention by calling or texting by phone)

Buzz someone in (phrasal verb) (to hit a button to allow someone to gain access to a premises)

I'm downstairs, behind the main gate. Can you buzz me in?

"I've got a sixpack of beer in my fridge. Do you guys want to get buzzed before watching the match?"

We recognized a noise. It was from mosquitoes buzzing around us.

Noun: Buzz

The buzz of bees makes me anxious, because I start to get worried that I'll get stung.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

goofing around

to 'goof around' (or to muck around) is to be silly. It is to clearly show through your actions that you're not taking a situation seriously – or with the seriousness it deserves. Or it could just be a way to lighten the mood by behaving in a slightly immature way. Generally, goofing around every once in a while is seen as ok, but someone who's always goofing around is seemingly unaware of how or when it's appropriate to be more responsible.

Quit goofing around and get back to work!

*"Stop jumping on the beds or you'll be grounded for a week!"
"Ok, we were just goofing around."*

It's hard to enjoy a film when kids at the front of the theatre are goofing around.

You shouldn't goof around when safety officials are explaining how to avoid accidents and what's required in the event of an accident.

about to

'About to' can signal that one's readiness to perform a task is in its final stage. If you're about to do something you're not specifying an exact time, but you're intending to do it very soon. It can also be used to draw attention to a very likely consequence of a process.

That vase is wobbling closer to the edge of the table. I think it's about to fall off.

Those dark clouds are coming closer. I think it's about to rain.

Can you leave work early? We're about to go out for a few drinks if you want to join us.

The villagers need to evacuate their homes and village now, because the nearby volcano is about to erupt!

on the condition

'On the condition' allows the listener or reader to expect a set of parameters that must exist (or obligations that one must promise to fulfill) before the speaker can feel comfortable granting a request. For this reason it's not uncommon to hear 'on the condition' in relation to favours. Those who have something to lose might permit a circumstance only on the condition that a promise or contract is agreed to in return.

"I know you said you've retired, but we really need a musician to play a few songs at the pub this Sunday."

"Ok, I'll do it on the condition that you donate \$100 to my favourite charity."

I'll join you on the flight on the condition that I get the window seat. I want to get a good view of the city from high above.

I hate horror films, but I'll watch this one with you on the condition that you help me plant seeds in the garden tomorrow morning.

Ok, I'll go bungee jumping, but only on the condition that we do it over a river, not over land.

in the not too distant future

Here it's worth mentioning the use of 'not too + noun (or adjective)' simply as a way to suggest what something is by revealing what it is not. It generally implies an emphasis towards the opposite of the noun or adjective. So, something that's predicted to occur in the not too distant future implies that it's not only not in the *distant* future, it's likely to occur relatively soon.

He's not too happy. = He's quite upset.

She was not too appreciative. = She showed very little appreciation.

We're none too pleased. = We're not pleased at all.

They were none too eager for me to walk through their home with muddy shoes. = They were strongly against it. / There's no way they were going to let me do that.

C



Calculate

1. determine (the amount or number of something) mathematically.

“calculate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+calculate> (27 September, 2021)

Calculate (the total of something, like a sum or a risk)

I wonder how scientists were able to calculate the distance from the Earth to the moon.

He calculated the sum of the two numbers.

I’m not going to jump out of a plane until I can calculate the risks and determine that it’s safe.

Noun: Calculation

She failed her maths exam because most of her calculations were incorrect.

Noun: Calculator

I use a calculator if I need to find the sum of large numbers.

Call

1. give (a baby or animal) a specified name.
2. cry out (a word or words).

“call” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+call> (28 September, 2021)

Call someone

Call someone something

Call for someone

Call out to someone

Call someone out (phrasal verb) (meaning to expose someone's faults or disloyalty).

Call up (phrasal verb x2) (meaning: 1. Ring someone with a phone and talk to them. 2. To be selected for something deemed necessary, on the basis of merit, or good/bad luck).

I call for you, but you never hear me.

She called out to her friend to warn her of danger ahead.

The employee at the capitalism festival was called out for sympathising with communists.

I'll run to the end of the cave then call out your name. Tell me if you hear me.

They called up the gas company **to complain about** a bill.

The cricketer was thrilled to be called up to play in the professional league.

Noun: Call

You knew I wasn't going to be available to take your call, but you could've left a message.

Camp

1. live for a time in a tent, especially while on holiday.

"camp" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+camp> (28 September, 2021)

Camp somewhere

I like to camp at the base of a mountain and watch the stars at night.

They camped in the woods in a 3-person tent.

We'll take some cards, torches, beer and marshmallows when we go camping next week.

Noun: Campsite

I hope we aren't lost in the woods for too long. We left our supplies back at the campsite, so it'll be more difficult to find our way back without torches, maps, and food.

Care

1. feel concern or interest; attach importance to something.
2. look after and provide for the needs of.

"care" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+care> (28 September, 2021)

Care for someone / something

Care about someone / something

Take care of someone / something (phrasal verb) (to look after and protect someone or something)

I don't care if my socks are different colours.

He cared for his mother when she was too old and frail to take care of herself.

The company will have to pay a fine because the director and CEO implemented a policy that destroyed wildlife. They don't care about the environment.

We have to take care of our waterways so marine life can thrive and be healthy, and we can be confident our seafood is not contaminated.

Carry

1. support and move (someone or something) from one place to another.
2. support the weight of.

“carry” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+carry> (28 September, 2021)

Carry something or someone

Carry on (phrasal verb X2) (meaning, 1: to continue. 2: to complain, typically in a way in which others would deem unnecessary, or childish)

Carry out (phrasal verb x2) (meaning, 1: to administer a task. 2: to carry something that’s inside to somewhere outside)

A large man can carry more bags than a young child.

She carried the shopping bags from the car to the kitchen.

The man carried on like a child begging for ice cream.

“We can’t wait for the rain to stop falling, we need to carry on if we want to get to the checkpoint before dusk,” one hiker said to the other.

“I need someone to refill the photocopier with paper. Can you carry out this task?” the boss asked his employee.

Carve

1. cut (a hard material) in order to produce an object, design, or inscription.
2. cut (cooked meat) into slices for eating.

“carve” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+carve+meaning> (28 September, 2021)

Carve something

I can use a chisel to carve a piece of wood.

He carved the pork with the knife.

She’ll carve the meat into thin slices, which her guests will enjoy at the dinner party.

Cause

1. make (something, especially something bad) happen.

“cause” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cause> (28 September, 2021)

Cause something to happen

Eating too much salt or sugar can cause health problems.

The storm caused millions of dollars in damages to homes and businesses.

He’s going to cause an accident if he continues to drive recklessly.

Noun: Cause

We are raising money for a good cause. All the money raised **will go towards** a cure for cancer.

Challenge

1. dispute the truth or validity of.
2. invite (someone) to engage in a contest.

“challenge” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+challenge> (28 September, 2021)

Challenge an assertion / assumption Challenge oneself or someone else

I need to challenge myself to learn new skills if I want to improve.

He challenged the competitor to a duel.

“I don’t want to go to that club. I don’t like the music they play,” one friend said to another.

“Don’t worry,” his friend replied. “There’s a new DJ playing tonight, and he challenges the audience to name a song he doesn’t know how to play. You can just come and request your favourite songs.”

Noun: Challenge

Defeating the undefeated side is going to be a very big challenge.

Change

1. make (someone or something) different; alter or modify.
2. replace (something) with something else, especially something of the same kind that is newer or better; substitute one thing for (another).

“change” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+change> (28 September, 2021)

Change oneself

Change something or someone

The leaves of many trees change colour during the autumn months.

She wants to have a baby, but her boyfriend doesn’t. She’s tried changing her his mind, but **his mind is made up**.

He’ll change his mind about wearing a jacket when he hears the weatherman announce how much rain is due to arrive.

Noun: Change

Being in a new place, away from my toxic work environment, will be a nice change.

Charge

1. demand (an amount) as a price for a service rendered or goods supplied.

2. formally accuse (someone) of something, especially an offence under law.

“charge” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+charge> (28 September, 2021)

Charge at something

Charge someone an amount of something

Charge someone (with a crime)

Sometimes I forget to charge my phone overnight and the battery dies.

She charged an extra fee for the extra service.

The bull will charge toward the matador when it sees the red flag being waved.

Chase

1. pursue in order to catch or catch up with.
2. drive or cause to go in a specified direction.

“chase” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+chase> (28 September, 2021)

Chase something (real or abstract)

Chase down (phrasal verb) (to chase and capture)

I once saw a cheetah chase a gazelle, but the gazelle got away.

He chased the criminal on foot for 2 kilometres before catching him.

Don't get involved with an organized crime syndicate. Inevitably you'll do something to upset someone and violent criminals will chase you down.

Noun: Chase

The bank robber drove along the highway, evading other road users, pedestrians, and law enforcement officers. The chase lasted 2 and a half

hours before the robber's car ran out of gas and he was apprehended by police.

Cheat

1. act dishonestly or unfairly in order to gain an advantage.
2. avoid (something undesirable) by luck or skill.

"cheat" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cheat> (28 September, 2021)

Cheat on someone or something

When marathon runners cheat by taking a shortcut they use less energy, but they also risk being caught and disqualified for breaking the rules.

He cheated on the exam, so his results did not reflect his true abilities.

The fall should've been enough to kill him, but he survived. It appears as though he cheated death.

She couldn't sleep well because she suspected her boyfriend had cheated on her.

Check

1. examine (something) in order to determine its accuracy, quality, or condition, or to detect the presence of something.

"check" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+check> (28 September, 2021)

Check something

Check on someone or something (phrasal verb) (meaning: to examine someone's / something's condition).

Check in on someone (phrasal verb) (to visit someone to see how they're feeling).

Check out (phrasal verb x4) (to stop investing emotion into something; to take one's life; to cast your attention on someone attractive/charismatic; to sign out of a hotel by returning key(s) and paying any remaining charges prior to departure).

I must remember to check the oven to make sure the cake doesn't get burnt.

He checked the temperature of the soup several times to make sure it was ready to be served.

Although reluctant, Louise knew she had to put her mother in a retirement home so healthcare professionals could look after her.

"Please remember to check in on your grandmother every once in a while," she told her children.

"Check out time is 10am" the clerk told the guests when they booked into the hotel.

"Check out that girl standing near the swimming pool. She's gorgeous," the teenage boy told his friend.

Cheer

1. shout for joy or in praise or encouragement.

"cheer" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cheer> (28 September, 2021)

Cheer for something or someone

Cheer someone or something on

The spectators at a football stadium cheer loud and passionately.

She cheered loudly in the hope her support would urge her football team to victory.

"Will you come to the game to cheer me on?" the basketballer asked his girlfriend.

Chew

1. bite and work (food) in the mouth with the teeth, especially to make it easier to swallow.

“chew” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+chew> (28 September, 2021)

Chew something Chew on something

I like my steak cooked medium-rare. If it's cooked for too long it stiffens and becomes difficult to chew.

She chewed the bubble-gum, then spat it out.

“There's no chance you'll be able to date that girl. She's way **out of your league**,” one friend told another. “I'll chew my hat if you ask her out and she says yes,” he added.

Clap

1. strike the palms of (one's hands) together repeatedly, typically in order to applaud someone or something.
2. slap (someone) encouragingly on the back or shoulder.

“clap” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+clap> (28 September, 2021)

Clap someone or something Clap for someone or something

Lots of people clap and shout at the racetrack when the racehorses run the final stretch of the race.

She clapped her hands because she felt the band deserved an applause for their great performance.

The spectators clap and cheer the participants of the Tour de France from the side of the road.

Clean

1. make clean; remove dirt, marks, or stains from.

“clean” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+clean> (28 September, 2021)

Clean something

Clean something out (phrasal verb) (to clean a specific space, thoroughly).

I don't clean my car very often, because it rains a lot where I live.

They cleaned the floor with a broom, then with a mop and soapy water.

“You'll have to do as I asked and clean out the garage before you can sit down to eat your dinner,” the mother told her lazy son.

Noun: Clean

The window was very clean after it was wiped with a cloth.

Clear

1. remove an obstruction or unwanted item or items from.

“clear” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+clear> (28 September, 2021)

Clear (an area or space)

Clear out (phrasal verb) (take items out of a space so that the space can be ready for an alternative use).

A pallet fell from a forklift and glass bottles smashed on the ground.

“Can you help clear this area so no one gets hurt, and the next delivery truck has room to park?” the manager asked his assistant in response to the accident.

She cleared the path so people could walk on it without being obstructed.

There was a lot of fog in the morning, but it cleared later in the day.

“We’ll clear out the basement so you can use it as a temporary bedroom or storage space,” the couple told their friend.

Clip

1. fasten or be fastened with a clip or clips.

“clip” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+clip> (28 September, 2021)

Clip something or someone

Clip something out

The birds’ wings were clipped so they wouldn’t fly away.

My dad clipped me over the ears when he discovered I’d stolen liquor from the cabinet.

The police officer, in his car, chased a fleeing criminal and accidentally clipped several parked cars while in pursuit.

Noun: Clip

I attached the pieces of paper with a clip. Specifically, a paperclip.

Close

1. to move so as to bar passage through something
2. to block against entry or passage
3. to deny access to

“close” Marriam Webster. <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/close> (28 September, 2021)

Close something

Close in on something (phrasal verb) (to get closer to the person or thing one is trying to control or understand).

Close down (phrasal verb) (for a business, institution, group, etc. to cease voluntarily, or as a result of losing the ability to stay in operation).

A lot of small businesses will close permanently due to the pandemic.

He closed the shop at 5pm, and opened it at 9am the next morning.

The shop is having a closing-down sale, which is why many of the prices are reduced.

“New evidence has helped us narrow the search, and we’re closing in on the suspect,” police told the reporters.

Coach

1. to train a sports player or team
2. to teach someone
a special skill, especially one connected with performing in public
3. to tell someone what to say or do in a particular situation

“coach” Marriam Webster.
https://www.macmillandictionary.com/dictionary/british/coach_2
(28 September, 2021)

Coach someone or a group

I finished playing football when I was 23, but some day in the future I’d like to coach.

He coached the football team to victory, and was celebrated for his contribution to the football club.

“They’ll learn to coach at the highest levels of sport at this prestigious academy,” the academy spokeswoman told the parents of prospective students.

Noun: Coach

The coach is responsible for getting his or her players mentally prepared and motivated to play well.

Coil

1. arrange (something long and flexible) in a coil.

“coil” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+coil+meaning> (28 September, 2021)

Coil something

I was a gaffer on a film set once, and I had to coil the lighting cable around my elbow and the palm of my hand in order to have it wrapped and stored correctly.

He coiled the wire by twisting it around a pencil, and each loop wrapped above the previous loop.

The gymnasts will do a choreographed routine including jumps, spins, and coiling a ribbon high in the air.

Noun: Coil

The coil of rope was placed inside the garage.

Collect

1. bring or gather together (a number of things).

“collect” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+collect> (28 September, 2021)

Collect something

I used to collect football cards, but I outgrew that hobby.

We collected all of the cans and bottles from the festival and placed them in the bins.

He already has a very impressive collection of stamps, and he'll be collecting more and more until the day he dies.

Colour

1. change the colour of (something) by painting, dyeing, or shading it.

"colour" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+colour> (28 September, 2021)

Colour something

"Do you colour your bedroom in many different colours?" one child asked another.

He coloured the wall and turned it into a beautiful mural.

"She's upstairs colouring in her sketch book," Sally's mother told Sally's friend.

Noun: Colour

A rainbow has 7 colours.

Comb

1. untangle or arrange (the hair) by drawing a comb through it.

"comb" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+comb> (28 September, 2021)

Comb something or someone

I sometimes comb my hair when it gets long.

I combed my hair because it was very messy, and I had an interview for a job.

"We'll comb the horses' hair to get them looking pretty before the show," the horse owner told her staff.

Noun: Comb

If your hair is messy, and you don't have a brush, maybe you have a comb you can use instead.

Command

1. give an authoritative or peremptory order.

"command" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+command> (28 September, 2021)

Command someone to do something

"I command you to break that cookie and share half of it with me!" a boy told his friend.

The officer commanded the soldiers to do 50 push-ups.

The owner commanded his dog to sit, and when his dog sat he gave it some food as a treat.

Noun: Command

Everyone was required to fire their weapons when the sergeant gave the command.

Communicate

1. share or exchange information, news, or ideas.

“communicate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+communicate> (28 September, 2021)

Communicate with someone **Communicate something to someone**

Being able to communicate with someone enhances the chances that there'll be respect and honesty in the relationship.

She communicated the terms and conditions of the contract over the phone.

If a couple does not communicate their feelings openly and honestly the relationship will suffer.

Noun: Communication

If the media and politicians insist on censoring us and lying to us, it will be impossible to have honest communication and discussion.

Compare

1. estimate, measure, or note the similarity or dissimilarity between.

“compare” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+compare> (28 September, 2021)

Compare something or someone (with / to something or someone)

It is often very difficult for employers to compare several job candidates, because many candidates are, in many ways, equally suitable for the job.

He compared the two written speeches and concluded that one was more appropriate than the other.

There are some media commentators who enjoy comparing athletes from different eras to determine the greatest of all time, but I think it's difficult

to choose just 1, because we tend to put current standards and expectations on people who had different constraints in other eras – constraints we don't understand or respect particularly well.

Compete

1. strive to gain or win something by defeating or establishing superiority over others.
2. be able to rival another or others.
3. take part in a contest.

"compete" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+compete+meaning> (28 September, 2021)

Compete against someone or something

Compete for someone or something

Compete in something (like a competition)

I think our culture wants people to compete against each other, but we actually achieve more when we're selfless and cooperative.

We competed in the triathlon and were completely exhausted **by the end** of it.

I believe the team will compete with all their effort and still lose the match, because they don't have as much talent and experience as their rivals.

Noun: Competition

The woman handed in her application form and got it approved, which gave her the right to compete in the competition.

Complain

1. express dissatisfaction or annoyance about something.

"complain" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+complain> (28 September, 2021)

Complain about someone or something **Complain to someone about something**

We shouldn't complain about the weather so much, because there are much bigger problems that people are dealing with in the world.

He complained about the service at the restaurant because the waiter was rude, and the food arrived very late.

"I'll complain to the manager if I have to wait another 5 minutes to be served," one frustrated customer said to another.

Noun: Complaint

I called my local member of parliament and made a complaint about the amount of graffiti that's appearing in my neighbourhood. The receptionist told me to report the matter to the police.

Complete

1. finish making or doing.
2. provide with the item or items necessary to make (something) full or entire.

"complete" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+complete> (28 September, 2021)

Complete something

It's frustrating to have a lot of work to do and needing to complete it before a fast-approaching deadline.

She completed the exam before everyone else because she was a gifted student and studied many hours in preparation.

We'll complete the lesson next week, because unfortunately there's an emergency I have to attend now.

Noun: Complete / Completion

I have just one more page of homework to finish. Soon it will be complete.

The completion date for the assignment is the 4th of July.

Concentrate

1. focus all one's attention on a particular object or activity.
2. gather (people or things) together in a common location.

“concentrate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+concentrate+meaning>

(28 September, 2021)

Concentrate on something

Concentrate (people or things together)

If we concentrate on solving the world’s problems we will, among many other things, reinforce the need to stop wasting natural resources and measuring our success by how much material wealth we own.

He found it difficult to concentrate on the IQ test while loud music played in the room next door.

They’ll need to concentrate if they want to understand the lecturer next week, because the content includes some confusing concepts.

Noun: Concentration

The students showed great concentration because they knew the professor didn’t like to repeat himself.

Concern

1. relate to; be about.
2. make (someone) anxious or worried.

“concern” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+concern> (28 September, 2021)

Concern oneself with something

Concern someone

I try not to concern myself with issues for which I have no control, nor do I pass judgement on someone if I don't know about their situation in life.

His sister concerned him when she shared details of being robbed in another country.

"We'll concern ourselves with the safety issues when and if something dangerous happens," said the foreman. His worker knew that sounded illogical, but he couldn't **spea**k up for fear of being fired.

Noun: Concern

My concern is that unnecessary accidents will occur until we address the potential risks and implement the appropriate safety protocols.

Confess

1. admit that one has committed a crime or done something wrong.

"confess" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+confess> (28 September, 2021)

Confess something to someone

I can confess to you that I've made many mistakes in my life, and I haven't learned from all of those mistakes.

The police were able to finish their investigation because their suspect confessed to the crime.

"I don't trust that guy. He'll confess to his sins, but then just go on another crime spree," a churchgoer told a priest.

Noun: Confession

"I have a confession to make. I've never eaten pancakes for breakfast," the man said. This, ordinarily, didn't sound particularly egregious, but it

was strange and shameful coming from this man, because he was the president of the local pancake appreciation club.

Confuse

1. make (someone) bewildered or perplexed.
2. make (something) more complex or less easy to understand.
3. identify wrongly; mistake.

“confuse” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+confuse> (28 September, 2021)

Confuse someone

“Please don’t confuse me with someone who cares,” the rude customer service agent told the customer.

The man confused her by giving a long and convoluted explanation.

“I’m not going to go to Ireland again,” the man said. “The Irish accent confuses me.”

Noun: Confusion

There is a lot of confusion surrounding the best way to diminish the threat of this virus, because many people have an opinion formed by listening to unreliable or untrustworthy news sources.

Connect

1. bring together or into contact so that a real or notional link is established.
2. associate or relate (something) in some respect.

“connect” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+connect+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Connect something or someone to / with something or someone

"I can't connect the suspect to the crime because new evidence suggests he was not at the crime scene when the crime occurred," the detective told his sergeant.

Someone connected the cord from the television to the power outlet.

If someone can come to my home and connect my television properly I will be very grateful.

Noun: Connection (physical or emotional)

We all have the ability to make strong and lasting emotional connections with others, and we should focus more of our efforts on this goal.

Consider

1. think carefully about (something), typically before making a decision.
2. look attentively at.

"consider" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+consider+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Consider something

I don't usually talk to people on a video call, but I am in lockdown this week and getting bored, so I'll consider calling some friends for a chat.

He considered all of the options before making a decision.

"Can you please consider my proposal?" the man asked the woman.

"Yes, I'll consider it." She later called him and said, "I've considered your proposal and decided not to accept it, but I appreciate you thinking of me."

Noun: Consideration

"Thanks for your consideration," the candidate wrote, because he was appreciative of the time and thought the potential employer had invested in considering him for the job.

Consist

1. be composed or made up of.

“consider” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+consist+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Consist of something

Humans consist of more than just flesh and bones, we also have a lot of water and bacteria.

A good party usually consists of a variety of good food and drink options.

“I’ll make a nice cocktail consisting of two fruits and two alcoholic spirits,” the bartender told the bar patrons.

Contain

1. have or hold (someone or something) within.
2. control or restrain (oneself or a feeling).

“contain” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+contain+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Contain something

I wish I could contain certain feelings inside a bottle. I would contain the feeling of being a young, happy traveller, and access that feeling whenever I’m in a negative mood.

We contained the virus in the laboratory.

I’m not going to be able to contain my excitement for the next Rolling Stones concert.

Noun: Container

He kept his lunch in a plastic container.

Continue

1. persist in an activity or process.
2. recommence or resume after interruption.

“continue” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+continue+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Continue with something Continue to do something

I continue to make the same mistakes despite plenty of opportunities to learn from them.

The image was very fuzzy, but she continued to watch the movie anyway.

I’ll continue writing this document until I’m hungry, or until the football match starts on tv.

Copy

1. make a similar or identical version of; reproduce.
2. imitate the style or behaviour of.

“copy” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+copy+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Copy someone or something

“Can you copy this document for me?” the teacher asked the school administrator.

He loved the meal so much that he asked the chef if he could copy the recipe.

I'll copy the dance moves and we can practice dancing together later.

Noun: Copy / Copies

I'll make several copies of my passport in case I get robbed while on holiday.

Correct

1. put right (an error or fault).

"correct" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+correct+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Correct someone or something (like a mistake or a misunderstanding)

I don't like to be corrected, because it often feels like I'm being interrupted.

I should learn to accept corrections as constructive feedback.

She corrected all of the spelling errors on her student's essay.

Correct me if I'm wrong, but I think the UK is no longer part of the EU.

Noun: Correction

The newspaper outlet was forced to admit that their article was inaccurate, because the editor did not make the necessary corrections before it went to print."

Cough

1. expel air from the lungs with a sudden sharp sound.

"cough" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cough+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

To cough

It's rude to cough without covering your mouth.

He had a cough for 3 weeks and it began to hurt his throat.

I'll probably cough and sneeze in the springtime because I have hay fever allergies.

Noun: Cough

His cough was so loud and forceful, I thought he was going to wake the neighbours.

Count

1. determine the total number of (a collection of items).
2. take into account; include.

"count" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+count+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Count things / people

Count up / down

Count on someone (phrasal verb) (to depend on them)

I sometimes sit outside a café and count the number of trucks that come through the main street of our small town.

We counted down from 10 at 10 seconds to midnight, then cheered and hugged to welcome in the new year!

I don't know if I can count on him, because he's very unreliable.

She counted from 1 to 100 **in an effort to** fall asleep.

I counted the coins in my wallet, and I have almost twenty dollars!

Cover

1. put something on top of or in front of (something), especially in order to protect or conceal it.
2. extend over (an area).

"cover" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cover+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Cover something

Cover up (phrasal verb) (to cover something that's exposed)

Cover for someone (phrasal verb) (to temporarily take someone's place to help them fulfill an obligation)

I cover freshly-baked cookies with a tea towel after bringing them out of the oven.

He covered his back with sunscreen to avoid being burnt by the sun.

They covered the pitch with a tarpaulin when it started to rain.

"If you cover for me at work today I promise I'll cover for you the next time you want to take a day off," the sick worker told his colleague.

Noun: Cover

Whenever it rains, I make sure my motorcycle is protected by a cover.

Crack

1. break or cause to break without a complete separation of the parts.

"crack" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+crack+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Crack something

Crack down on something or someone (phrasal verb) (to be more diligent and rigorous in regulating something or someone, so that accountability and responsibility are upheld).

Crack onto someone (phrasal verb) (to show someone that you're interested in them).

To crack it (phrasal verb) (to lose one's temper).

You have to crack an egg before you scramble it.

I took good care of my phone for 5 years before finally dropping it on the ground, causing a few small cracks in the screen.

"Look, Gavin is cracking on to Leonie. I guess he must like her," one friend told another.

"She's gorgeous, friendly, and rich. What's not to like?" his friend responded.

Someone scrapped the side of my car with their keys. You know I'm usually quite mild-mannered and calm, but in that moment I absolutely cracked it," the man told his friend.

"What did you do?"

"I looked up at the sky and screamed obscenities for about a minute," he said.

Noun: Crack

I'll have to take my car into the repair shop, because the windscreen has a crack.

Crash

1. (of a vehicle) collide violently with an obstacle or another vehicle.
2. move or cause to move with force, speed, and sudden loud noise.

"crash" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+crash+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Crash into something

Crash out (phrasal verb) (to crash in a race in such a way as to not be able to continue).

I need to keep my eyes on the road whilst driving, lest I veer off the road and crash into something.

The driver was not concentrating when she veered off the road and crashed her car into a tree.

The cyclist was leading the race until he crashed out.

Noun: Crash

Several people were injured in the crash and had to be taken to hospital.

Crawl

1. move forward on the hands and knees or by dragging the body close to the ground.

“crawl” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+crawl+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

To crawl (+ preposition of place + a / an / the noun)

I don't think you could pay me enough money to crawl on hands and knees over a mile of broken glass.

The baby crawled across the kitchen floor for the first time, making his parents proud.

The soldiers had to keep low to avoid being seen by the enemy, so they crawled through the forest for 7 kms.

Noun: Crawl

We were making good time, but then we got closer to the city and heavy traffic caused us to a crawl.

Cross

1. go or extend across or to the other side of (an area, stretch of water, etc.).
2. pass in an opposite or different direction; intersect.

“cross” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cross+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Cross something (like a road)

It’s obvious that people who have a fear of heights don’t like to cross bridges that are suspended high in the air.

He crossed through his neighbour’s backyard and jumped the fence into another neighbour’s yard in order to retrieve a ball.

“I’ll cross the road if you cross the road,” one chicken said to the other.

Noun: Cross

The mother was very cross with her daughter for painting on the walls.

Crush

1. compress or squeeze forcefully so as to break, damage, or distort in shape.

“crush” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+crush+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Crush something

I think it feels satisfying to crush the shell of a peanut, but it’s a little inconvenient to have to do that when you’re hungry.

My baby brother, despite his size, can crush a peanut in his hand.

“I’ll squeeze the tomato in my hand until it’s completely crushed,” one participant of the tomato-throwing festival said to a friend.

Cry

1. shed tears, typically as an expression of distress, pain, or sorrow.
2. shout or scream, typically to express fear, pain, or grief.

"cry" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cry+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Cry about something Cry over something

I would cry if you told me I'd never be able to travel again.

The boy cried when his ice-cream landed on the ground.

She'll cry when she hears the tragic news on the tv.

Cure

1. relieve (a person or animal) of the symptoms of a disease or condition.

"cure" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cure+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Cure something

I hope we manage to cure a lot of current and emerging diseases.

I wonder if the scientist that cured polio is still alive today.

I believe that scientists will cure cancer in the future, but I'll be dead before that day comes.

Noun: Cure

The scientists have created a cure for the disease. They ought to be celebrated and treated like heroes.

Curl

1. form or cause to form into a curved or spiral shape.
2. (in weight training) lift (a weight) using only the hands, wrists, and forearms.

“curl” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cure+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Curl oneself

Curl (oneself) up

Curl something

I wish humans had a shell in which we could curl inside for protection.

She curled the wool into a woollen ball.

The tornado curled around the house before hitting it and causing major damage.

Noun: Curl

The girl didn't want to have straight hair. She wanted to have curls in her hair.

Curve

1. form or cause to form a curve.

“curve” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+curve+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Curve something

Curve around something

I can't believe the speed with which Formula 1 cars curve around the tracks.

He had to go straight down the road for 300 metres, then curve slightly to the left.

"We'll walk through the town square, then a narrow alley that curves to the right and leads to a marble staircase," the guide told the tourists.

Noun: Curve

The 8th hole at his favourite golf course has bunkers on the left and curves to the right.

Cycle

1. ride a bicycle.
2. move in or follow a regularly repeated sequence of events.

"cycle" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+cycle+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Cycle somewhere

Drivers are supposed to leave room for cyclists to cycle on the side of the road.

The cyclist cycled on his bike.

I have a motorcycle which I ride on the weekends, but I think I should sell it and buy a bicycle, because I'll increase my fitness if I cycle on the weekends.

Noun: Cycle / Cyclical

The clothes are still dirty because the washing machine has not started its cycle.

The Earth's rotation around the sun is cyclical.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

out of your league

Often said in a light-hearted, teasing way, "He/she is out of your league," is a way of saying that he/she is so special or unique (or any other positive attribute) that their overall status is too high for any feeling of attraction or romanticism to be mutual. It's usually through the familiarity of friendship that one would feel comfortable saying "He/she is out of your league."

"I think that guy likes me. Whenever I see him he's always so friendly and funny."

"He's like that to everyone. He's interested in adventure sports and refined, cultured women who love to travel, while you're constantly anxious and hate travel."

"So, you're saying he's out of my league."

"Well, it's more a question of compatibility. You're just not right for each other."

"Did you see that girl on tv? The camera panned across to show her in the crowd at the football match. Damn, she is so beautiful."

"Keep dreaming, buddy. She was way out of your league."

"I want to go to northern Europe. I'd love to go there to get a girlfriend, but all those tall, blonde Scandinavian women are so gorgeous. They're way out of my league."

"You should have more confidence. Just because some women are good-looking, doesn't mean they all want to go out with a male model."

"That chick is so hot. I'm gonna ask her out."

"You're kidding aren't you, mate? She's sweet, sexy and sophisticated, and you're overweight and spend most of your time in the pub eating chips and drinking beer. She's way out of your league."

to complain about

We don't complain *on* or *by* something, we complain 'about' something. We might make a complaint *over* the phone or *to* another person, but it will be 'about' something in particular.

Can you please stop complaining about the weather. There's no point complaining about something that's completely out of your control.

I know everyone has different taste in music, but I'm tempted to complain about the music this bar has chosen to play; everyone here wants to feel positive vibes, and they're playing sad, slow, depressing songs.

"If we don't complain about the government, we'll continue to be plagued by their inefficiency and incompetence."

"Sadly, I don't think complaining will change anything."

It's easy to complain about things when times get tough. What's not so easy is accepting a bad situation or a difficult challenge and striving hard to overcome it.

will go towards

To say some funds, efforts, contributions or collections etc. will 'go towards something' is to suggest where or to whom the contributions will be directed. People tend to want enough clarity about a project to be confident that their money or hard work is in the service or something that needs it and won't be wasted. So, communicating something along the lines of 'this will go towards a good cause' is a bare minimum, and sets up the speaker to give more details to aid the listener's understanding and/or raise interest. To 'put something towards something' is even more common. Here are some examples of both:

A percentage of the profits we make during this sale will go towards the purchase of much needed mosquito nets.

Every time you swear, put a dollar in the jar, and at the end of the year we'll put it all towards a new barbeque.

Thank you for helping to construct the new community centre. Your efforts will go towards ensuring we have a safe place for young people to socialise, and a place for our elderly residents to meet and share stories on weekends.

We'll have to put some money towards travel insurance, because apparently we're not allowed to travel without it anymore.

his mind is made up

When something is made, whether it's a house or a cake or a car, the past tense 'made' implies that the work is done. We don't say something

is made across or down or through, however we do say 'made up' when we refer to someone's decision making. We tend not to say "Her thoughts are made up," because thoughts are seen as part of the process of arriving at a solid decision, opinion or belief. We can also 'make up with someone.' To suggest two people have made up means they've resolved their differences and are now on friendlier terms. You'll often hear 'his mind is made up' in the context of a preceding question from someone hoping or wondering if someone else is open to the possibility of changing a belief, because the expression is used as an exclamation that ends the potential for any more procrastinating. It is a full stop declaring the finality of one's views on a matter.

Don't bother asking again. His mind is made up.

There's no point arguing. Her mind is made up.

I'm thinking about making a pudding for Christmas, but I haven't made my mind up yet.

We need to know if he's joining us on the rock-climbing trip this weekend. Has he made up his mind yet?

by the end

'By the end' allows the speaker to jump forward in time and reveal the outcome of details previously set in motion. We can use it when something has begun, and recognise 'by the end' as the structure that informs us of a subsequent, predictable result. It can also be used to highlight an amusing contrast that few people could see coming. You could start with something trivial that 'by the end' was inspiring, educational and entertaining:

People were falling asleep in the first 20 minutes of the show, but by the end they were cheering and shouting and having a great time.

Or start with an emotion of frustration or excitement, for example, that continued along the same trajectory. It can be used to move oneself or others along a timeline to reveal a sense of resignation. I.e.

Our flight was delayed for 3 hours, then when we finally arrived we were stuck in traffic for another 2 hours. I argued with a taxi driver who threatened to kick me out of his cab. By the end I just gave up and tried to fall asleep – I didn't feel like my day was going to get any better.

Here are a few more examples:

I was excited to watch the cricket on tv at the start of the day, but the play was so uneventful and boring from the beginning. By the end of the morning session I was back outside, going for a walk.

The movie went for about an hour too long. By the end of it, people were either groaning or rushing off to the toilet to relief themselves.

The local market had so many different stalls lined up around the football oval. By the end of my first lap of the oval, I must have seen around 200 separate stalls.

Not a lot of useful information was collected at the start of the investigation, but by the end of it, a huge amount of data had been stored and analysed.

speak up

We use the word 'up' with 'speak' in response to a speaker whose voice is not at a volume that makes comprehension easy. We use 'listen up' in a similar way when we want someone to raise the intensity of their focus in order to be aware of what is being said. 'Speak up' can also be used not only in terms of literal volume, but with regard to making one's feelings, ideas, and intentions known (particularly when fear, anxiety or embarrassment makes it difficult for one to do such a thing). Here are some examples:

The professor has such a soft voice. I can't hear him from the back of this room. I'm going to have to move to the front of the room or ask him to speak up.

Speak up! I can't hear you.

You need to learn to speak up for yourself. Your colleagues have no right to bully you.

Please don't be shy. Please speak up and share your ideas if you have any.

in an effort to

'In an effort to' can be used at the start or in the middle of a sentence so that an action corresponds to its significance. In other words, an

explanation of why an action was performed. It can be useful when the purpose would otherwise be unclear without it.

The politician gave everyone a free puppy in an effort to win their vote.

She cleaned the house in an effort to make it look nice for the inspection.

He took time off work and booked a table for two at a nice restaurant in an effort to please his wife on their wedding anniversary.

She climbed onto the roof in an effort to retrieve a tennis ball.

D



Dam

1. build a dam across (a river or lake).
2. hold back or obstruct (something).

“dam” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dam+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dam something

“We shouldn’t dam the river here, because several communities rely on the water flowing downstream,” one man said to another at their town hall meeting.

The farming company dammed the river because a barrier was needed to allow cattle to cross.

“They’re not going to dam this stream, because environmental and animal rights activists would make it too difficult for them.”

Noun: Dam.

The city planners decided to build a dam to ensure residents have enough water in times of drought.

Damage

1. inflict physical harm on (something) so as to impair its value, usefulness, or normal function.
2. have a detrimental effect on.

“damage” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+damage+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Damage something

I don’t like other people driving my car, because I once loaned my car to a friend and he damaged it.

He was asked to deliver a framed photograph, but he accidentally dropped it and damaged it beyond repair.

Please don't try to carry my big sofa through the narrow hallway, you'll damage the walls.

Noun: Damage

The insurance team arrived at the flooded home to assess how much damage the flood had caused.

Dance

1. move rhythmically to music, typically following a set sequence of steps.

"dance" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dance+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dance

Dance to music

Dance with someone

I like to dance to funk music.

He wanted to dance with her, but she was dancing with another man.

We are doing a research project and need to find out how many cultures around the world dance around a campfire for rituals and ceremonies.

Noun: Dance

They moved their bodies to the rhythm of the music to create a new dance.

Dare

1. have the courage to do something.
2. defy or challenge (someone) to do something.

“dare” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dare+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dare someone to do something **Dare to do something**

Do you dare to dream? If you're too afraid to imagine a wonderful future, you'll never be able to plan and act to achieve something great.

Someone dared him to swim across the river, and he did it!

The kids were always getting into trouble because they were always daring each other to do crazy things.

Noun: Dare

The man accepted the dare and ate the super-hot chili, then sat on the toilet for the next 3 and a half days.

Decay

1. (of organic matter) rot or decompose through the action of bacteria and fungi.

“decay” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+decay+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

To decay

If organic matter is left outside too long, the sun will play a part in decaying it.

The tooth was decaying rapidly, and would have to be removed or repaired.

“If we stay here in the African savannah, we'll be able to see that dead zebra decay in the searing heat,” one tourist said to another. Moments later, the zebra was eaten by a pack of lions.

Deceive

1. deliberately cause (someone) to believe something that is not true, especially for personal gain.
2. (of a thing) give (someone) a mistaken impression.

“deceive” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+deceive+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Deceive someone (into thinking / doing something)

I think people who believe the zodiac sign descriptions written in newspapers are easily deceived.

She deceived me! She said she was paying the bills, but she actually took the day off and went to the beach.

“We’ll have to deceive dad into thinking the caravan park has Wi-Fi if we want him to take us there,” one child said to his brother.

“You’re right. He won’t go there unless he can watch the football game, and he won’t be able to watch the football game without a Wi-Fi connection. It’s **a dirty trick**, but we have to do it to get close to the treasure buried under the trampolines, and have a chance of digging it up.”

Noun: Deception

The woman didn’t care that her husband drank beer at the pub with his friends – she was angry and disappointed that he lied to her about his whereabouts. It was an unnecessary and hurtful act of deception.

Decide

1. come or bring to a resolution in the mind as a result of consideration.

“decide” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+decide+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Decide to do (or not do) something

I can't decide if I should drink peppermint tea or lemon and ginger tea.

She knew it would be too hot to run at midday, so she decided to run early in the morning.

They'll decide whether or not to take an umbrella when they see the weather report on the news.

Noun: Decision

His manager tried to persuade him to work late into the evening, but he had made his decision to leave at 5pm.

Decorate

1. make (something) look more attractive by adding extra items or images to it.
2. confer an award or medal on (a member of the armed forces).

"decorate" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+decorate+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Decorate something

I would like to decorate my own house. Specifically, I'd like to build a mancave and decorate the walls in sporting paraphernalia.

She decorated the living room with a Christmas tree, lights, and tinsel on the 1st of December.

He'll decorate the bedroom with blue colours in preparation for the arrival of his newborn son.

Noun: Decoration

The homes in the street looked beautiful at Christmastime, covered in sparkling decorations.

Delay

1. make (someone or something) late or slow.

“delay” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+delay+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Delay something or someone

I don't like waiting longer than necessary for anything, so I'm always frustrated when event organisers delay the start time at late notice.

The flight was delayed because the pilot was late getting to the airport.

She'll delay the start time of the movie if everyone with a ticket will be late.

Noun: Delay

“What's the reason for the delay?” one customer asked the store manager.

“We've ran out of burgers and we're waiting for more to arrive,” the manager replied.

Delight

1. please (someone) greatly.

“delight” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+delight+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Delight someone

I delight audiences when I sing and dance on stage.

The guests' delighted the hosts by presenting them with many gifts.

The government department delighted the woman by approving her funding application.

Noun: Delight

"I can't hide my delight; I just secured tickets to the Superbowl!" the American football enthusiast declared.

Deliver

1. bring and hand over (a letter, parcel, or goods) to the proper recipient or address.
2. provide (something promised or expected).

"deliver" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+deliver+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Deliver something

I would happily deliver pizzas if the job paid a lot more money.

She delivered the package to the recipient.

"He'll have to deliver an important speech on workplace safety if he wants to keep his job," the demanding supervisor told colleagues.

Noun: Delivery

I had to return the product because it was broken at the time of delivery.

Depend

1. be controlled or determined by.
2. be able to trust; rely on.

"depend" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+depend+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Depend (intransitive verb)

Depend on someone or something (phrasal verb)

I can't depend on him to look after our grandmother, because he's so lazy and forgetful.

We're depending on you to be there on time. We can't afford any delays.

She's depended on her brother for emotional support, but lately he's become emotionally distant due to his own mental health concerns.

Noun: Dependence

The country's dependence on oil means they have been slow to adapt to more environmentally friendly practices.

Describe

1. give a detailed account in words of.

"describe" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+describe+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Describe someone or something to someone

"Can you describe how the situation unfolded?" the school principal asked the student, referring to a schoolyard fight.

She described the job responsibilities to the new workers.

He'll have to describe his dream to his therapist if he wants to **get the most out of** his therapy.

Noun: Description

The woman gave a very detailed description of her attacker, and as a result the police were able to recognise and apprehend the perpetrator very quickly.

Desert

1. abandon (a person, cause, or organization) in a way considered disloyal or treacherous.
2. (of people) leave (a place), causing it to appear empty.
3. (of a quality or ability) fail (someone) when most needed.

“desert” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+desert+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Desert someone

Desert something (like a project / goal)

The campers deserted the lake and climbed to the mountain ridge.

They didn't want to desert their friends, but they had to continue their journey.

He'll be upset if she deserts him, because he needs her at this time.

Deserve

1. do something or have or show qualities worthy of (a reaction which rewards or punishes as appropriate).

“deserve” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+deserve+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Deserve something

He had worked hard for the company for 20 years, so he was naturally quite angry when they fired him for making a small mistake.

She knew she was a good girlfriend and deserved some flowers on Valentine's Day.

We'll try to remain calm if the game is close. After all, if our team deserves to win, then they'll win.

Destroy

1. end the existence of (something) by damaging or attacking it.
2. ruin (someone) emotionally or spiritually.
3. defeat (someone) utterly.

“destroy” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+destroy+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Destroy something

“I swear, I didn’t destroy the evidence!” the worried man told the officer.
“Who said anything about any evidence?” the officer said.

She destroyed her brother’s cricket bat because he stole her watch.

You’ll enjoy watching this show – home renovators destroy homes before rebuilding them.

Noun: Destruction

The typhoon caused a lot of destruction.

Detect

1. discover or identify the presence or existence of.
2. discern (something intangible or barely perceptible).
3. discover or investigate (a crime or its perpetrators).

“detect” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+detect+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Detect something or someone (doing something, or having done something)

I can’t be sure she is being serious, because I detect a hint of sarcasm.

He drove the same road every morning and it was always the same, but this morning he detected something different: a fox sitting in the middle of the road.

The police camera will detect the speed of every oncoming car.

Noun: Detection

Some future technologies will have better capacity for facial recognition and motion detection.

Develop

1. grow or cause to grow and become more mature, advanced, or elaborate.
2. start to exist, experience, or possess.

“develop” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+develop+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Develop something or someone

I know a lot of IT professionals who develop software for overseas companies.

She studied psychology and hypnotherapy and developed an ability to know when someone’s lying.

He is developing from a boy into a man.

Noun: Development

The development of an athlete is largely determined by training methods, genetics, emotional well-being, and diet and sleeping habits, among other factors.

Disagree

1. have or express a different opinion.

“disagree” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+disagree+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Disagree with someone or some idea / concept / proposal etc.

Some people have things in common, but they disagree on many issues because their values and experiences are so different.

She thought the men at the party acted like boys, and he disagreed – he thought they acted very maturely.

The citizens of a country often disagree with the decisions made by their government.

Noun: Disagreement

We’d better stop talking about the topic of foreign military interventions, because I don’t think we’ll be able to overcome our disagreements.

Disappear

1. cease to be visible.

“disappear” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+disappear+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Disappear from somewhere

She appears in my dreams, and then disappears when I wake up.

He was standing there in the middle of the room one moment, and then he was gone. He just disappeared!

Everything ahead of me is disappearing in the fog. I’ll have to turn my car headlights on in order to see the road better.

Noun: Disappearance

The tour company said they were concerned and mystified by the sudden disappearance of one of their customers. "He was here one moment and then next he was gone. I don't know what could've happened," a staff member said. Police were called and a search party began to search for the missing man.

Disapprove

1. have or express an unfavourable opinion.
2. officially refuse to agree to.

"disapprove" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+disapprove+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Disapprove of someone or something

I disapprove of people throwing their cigarette butts on the ground. They should throw them into rubbish bins.

She disapproved of her brother's taste in music, specifically the lyrics, which contained a lot of profanity.

Protesters are going to march on the street, and they'll probably strongly disapprove of any police presence.

Noun: Disapproval

"You should not have opened the liquor cabinet while your father and I were away," the mother told her teenage son. Her disapproval was obvious to anyone listening.

Disarm

1. take a weapon or weapons away from (a person, force, or country).
2. allay the hostility or suspicions of.

“disarm” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+disarm+meaning> (29
September, 2021)

Disarm something (like an explosive, or a volatile situation)

I imagine it is quite stressful trying to disarm a bomb.

The man was pointing a gun at the hostages, but the police were able to disarm him.

“We’ll reach the crest of the mountain, infiltrate the enemy’s base, then disarm them when they’re asleep,” the commanding officer told his soldier.

Discover

1. find unexpectedly or during a search.

“discover” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+discover+meaning> (29
September, 2021)

Discover something or someone

He discovered a secret and was eager to tell people about it.

While digging in the garden he was shocked to discover an old treasure chest.

I’ll discover who the killer is in the next episode of my favourite tv series. I’m very excited.

Noun: Discovery

The chest of gold and jewellery found on the bottom of the ocean was their greatest discovery. They were convinced it was the best thing they’d ever find.

Dislike

1. feel distaste for or hostility towards.

“dislike” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dislike+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dislike someone or something

I dislike people who are arrogant.

She dislikes coffee, but she likes tea.

“You’ll have to show your mother how much you dislike doing homework while your friends are playing video games without you,” a boy told his friend.

“Are you kidding?!” he replied. “She knows I hate it, but she makes me do my homework anyway.”

Divide

1. separate or be separated into parts.
2. disagree or cause to disagree.

“divide” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+divide+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Divide something, or a group of people or things

I think most people say they live in a nation that’s united, but – due to historical events, cultural differences, different levels of inequality and opportunity, etc. – most nations are somewhat divided.

The townsfolk were divided on how to deal with the issue of vandalism in their town.

“The teachers will divide the ice-cream for each student so you all have equal portions,” the school principal told the excited students.

Noun: Division

The country's ability to create the most useful policies was hampered by the media presenting fake news, which caused further division between groups.

Double

1. consisting of two equal, identical, or similar parts or things.

"double" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+double+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Double the amount of something

He doubled the amount of respect others had for him at his place of work, because he worked very hard and impressed everyone in the workplace.

She doubled her efforts and achieved her goal in half the usual time.

If I could double my earnings **I'd** plan more holidays.

Doubt

1. feel uncertain about.

"doubt" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+doubt+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Doubt someone or something

I doubt that I could win a hotdog eating contest with my small mouth, small stomach, and small appetite.

She doubted whether she could sail around the world with only a month of sailing practice.

They doubted the marriage would last, because the newlyweds were from vastly different cultures with vastly different values.

Drag

1. pull (someone or something) along forcefully, roughly, or with difficulty.
2. (of time) pass slowly and tediously.

“drag” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+drag+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Drag someone or something

Drag someone (phrasal verb) (in sporting parlance, for a manager or coach to take a player off the field, usually due to poor performance).

I dragged the tyre along the ground and wasted a lot of energy; it would have been more efficient to roll it.

The player was dragged for giving away a penalty and potentially costing his side the win.

The man fell off the horse, but his foot got caught in the stirrup and he was dragged along the ground for 200 metres before the horse finally stopped. The man was taken to hospital and recovered from some minor injuries.

Noun: Drag

“This video is a drag,” one student said to another. “Yeah, I agree. It’s very boring – this class is dragging on and on,” his friend replied.

Drain

1. cause the water or other liquid in (something) to run out, leaving it empty or dry.
2. deprive of strength or vitality.

“drain” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+drain+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Drain something

I drained the old oil from my motorcycle, then replaced it with clean oil.

They wanted to swim in the pool, but it had been drained in order to do a thorough clean before the summer season.

“Doctors will drain the fluid from his leg before commencing the operation,” the nurse told the worried family members.

Noun: Drain

Please don't empty toxic chemicals into the drain. Those chemicals will flow into the water supply and harm other people and animals.

Dream

1. experience dreams during sleep.
2. indulge in daydreams or fantasies about something greatly desired.

“dream” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dream+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dream of something

Dream about someone or something

Dream on (phrasal verb) (to engage in wishful thinking)

I know I dream about many things at night, but I usually can't remember any of the details in the morning.

Paula dreamed of leaving her job last night, but this morning she woke and accepted that today would be another hard day at the office.

She'll probably dream about eating delicious food because she's **gone to bed** quite hungry.

Noun: Dream

I slept very well. I think it's because I was having a very pleasant dream.

Dress

1. put on one's clothes.
2. decorate (something) in an artistic or attractive way.

"dress" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dress+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dress oneself or someone else

Dress something

Dress in something

Dress up in something

I've been able to dress myself since I was 2 years old.

The businessmen were dressed in suits and ties.

The girls decided to dress up in Halloween costumes.

Noun: Dress

The woman wore a beautiful black dress to the fancy dinner party.

Drip

1. let fall or be so wet as to shed small drops of liquid.

"drip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+drip+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Drip onto / into / over / under something

When I see water dripping from a bottle I assume the bottle has a split.

There must be a leak in the house, because I can hear water dripping.

He squeezed the wet sponge and it dripped into the sink.

Noun: Drip

The sick man needed a drip in order to receive liquid into his blood intravenously.

Drop

1. let or make (something) fall vertically.
2. fall vertically.

“drop” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+drop+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Drop something

Drop something from somewhere

Drop something onto something or someone

I cry when I drop my ice cream on the ground.

He got on top of the roof with a basketball and dropped it onto the garden below.

If she keeps running very fast, she’s going to drop the ball and trip over it.

Drown

1. die through submersion in and inhalation of water.
2. deliberately kill (a person or animal) by drowning.

“drown” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+drown+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Drown something or some living thing

Drown something out (phrasal verb) (to overload or inhibit in such way as to obscure, depriving the sense(s) of the ability to recognise or understand certain inputs).

The possum was hit by a car and rolled into a dam, where sadly, it drowned.

The farmer tried to save the sheep, but the sheep drowned in the flood.

The rescue crew probably aren't going to be able to find the fisherman alive; it seems likely he drowned soon after his boat capsized.

Drum

1. play on a drum or drums.
2. make a continuous rhythmic noise.
3. beat (the fingers, feet, etc.) repeatedly on a surface, especially as a sign of impatience or annoyance.

"drum" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+drum+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Drum something

Drum something up (like support) **(phrasal verb)** (to campaign to get support for something)

Apparently when my cousin was a baby, he drummed his hands on the refrigerator for hours on end.

She drummed the drum to the beat of the music.

We know that our project is not the best one in the competition, so we'll need to drum it up by highlighting the most appealing aspects of it, and be careful not to mention any of the negative aspects.

Noun: Drum

The drummer beat his drum and kept to the beat of the song. The crowd cheered.

Dry

1. become dry.

“dry” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dry+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dry something or someone

It’s easier to dry myself with a beach towel than it is to dry myself with a small cloth.

The cushion was damp, so they left it in the sun to dry.

Our dog is having a bath. As soon as he gets out of the bath he’ll dry himself by shaking his body and rubbing his hair against the carpet.

Noun: Dry

I don’t need to put my clothes in front of the heater today – they will be dry in a few minutes because it’s a very hot day.

Dust

1. remove the dust or dirt from the surface of (something) by wiping or brushing it.
2. cover lightly with a powdered substance.

“dust” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+dust+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Dust something

I usually dust a dirty bench with a duster if a duster is available.

We need to do some dusting before the real estate agent arrives and shows prospective tenants the house.

They're getting paid a small wage to look after the antique shop. Their duties include using the cash register and dusting the items.

Noun: Dust

I couldn't see the dust in the room, but I know it was there because the vacuum cleaner is now full of dust.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

a dirty trick

A 'dirty trick' is one that has exceeded the boundary of what could be considered reasonable and ethical when trying to be funny or clever. Everyone has their own interpretation of what they consider acceptable when subjecting someone to a trick. When we use the term, it's often in the context of everyone operating with a shared sense of the unwritten rules and behaviours that govern their interactions, and then someone's trickery breaks that unwritten code. The act has fallen below a moral standard that typically makes it seem distasteful.

Swapping my water with vodka may have been funny to you, but I think it was a dirty trick.

You left the ham hanging over the edge of the table, knowing it was just out of reach of the hungry dog. Why do you play such dirty tricks?

He deflated the tires on her bicycle and she had to walk 5kms home as a result. It was a dirty trick.

The pranksters played a dirty trick on their friend. They replaced his Vaseline with a topical ointment, which irritated his skin.

get the most out of

To 'get the most out of something' is to use it to its fullest potential; to extract whatever benefit it contains to maximum effect. However, it's usually used in a more intangible sense, like getting the most out of one's talents, rather than a literal sense, which can however still be appropriate. "Who can get the most toothpaste out of this tube?" for example.

"If you don't practice in a smart and disciplined way, and give great effort, you'll never get the most out of yourself," the trainer told the athlete.

We should charge our camera batteries and make sure we get a good sleep if we want to get the most out of our hike tomorrow.

The researchers didn't get the most out of their trip. They were initially told they would have access to all facilities, but at the last minute were told they'd only be allowed to visit government approved sites.

He failed to get the most out of the meditation retreat because he was too distracted by his thoughts.

If I could, I would

'If I could' sets up that 'I would (or wouldn't)'. Your ability to complete a task is conditional on one or a number of elements needing to be in place for you to achieve it, so, often we hear 'If I could' to confer to the listener that all elements except one have been fulfilled, and if the final one can be satisfied, it will clear the way for the final outcome to be achieved.

If I could travel back in time, I would see what the Earth looked like 200,000 years ago.

If she could afford a campervan, she'd quit her job and travel around Australia.

If we could stop abusing each other on social media, maybe we would find a way to work together and celebrate all the good things about humanity.

If we could more easily harness the power of solar and wind, would we still be using so many fossil fuels?

gone to bed

We can use 'gone' simply to mean that someone or something isn't here anymore.

*"Where is he?"
"He's gone."*

You'll miss me when I'm gone. (Meaning, I won't be coming back).

But gone can be used with 'to + (location)' to communicate where someone has relocated. It's a past tense verb, so you could hear 'The trash has gone to the landfill,' but not 'The trash will gone to the landfill.' We also use 'gone' with 'for' for some daily activities, and to talk about a duration of time (which also implies that the speaker plans to return after that duration).

I've gone for lunch.

We've gone for a walk.

I'll be gone for 12 minutes = I'll be back here in 12 minutes.

We use 'gone to + a known city or country', or for a few common places that are part of our routine, for example:

She's gone to Rome.

He's gone to school.

He's gone to bed.

She's gone to work.

'Gone to' is otherwise used with 'the':

We've gone to the cinema.

They've gone to the bakery.

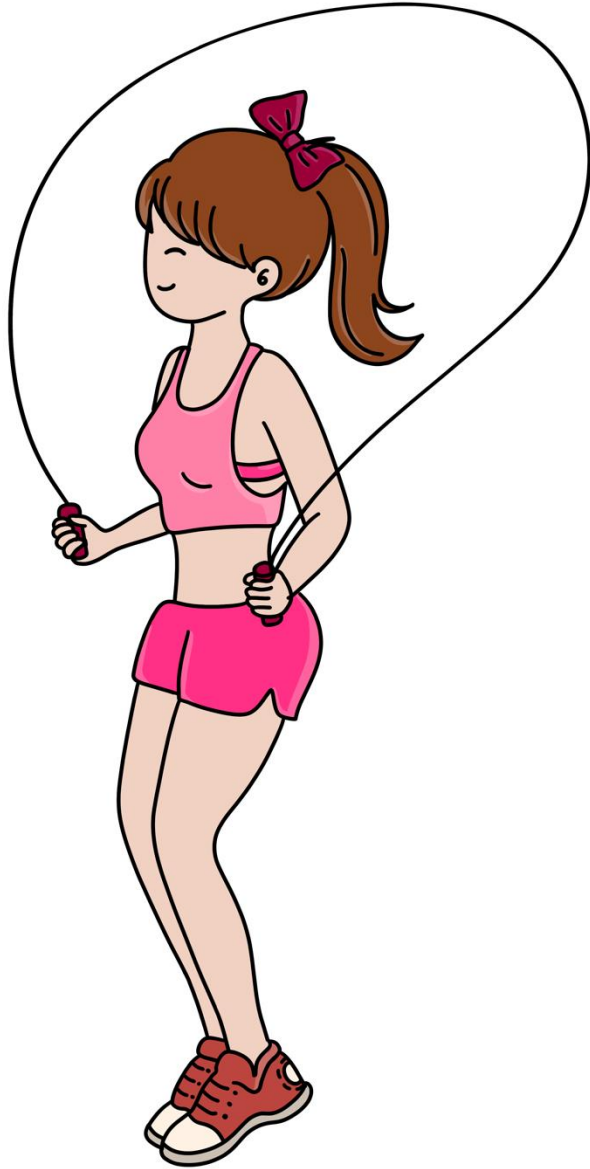
She's gone to the beach.

On these occasions, we see it used with neither 'to' nor 'the':

He's gone home.

She's gone out.

E



Earn

1. obtain (money) in return for labour or services.
2. (of an activity) cause (someone) to obtain (money).
3. (of capital invested) gain (money) as interest or profit.

“earn” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+earn+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Earn something

“If you do your chores, you’ll earn a reward,” the mother told her young son.

He earned his place in the team thanks to hard work, training, and dedication.

She’ll earn a military award for her bravery in the combat zone.

Educate

1. give intellectual, moral, and social instruction to (someone), typically at a school or university.
2. provide or pay for instruction for (one's child), especially at a school.
3. give (someone) training in or information on a particular subject.

“educate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+educate+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Educate someone or some group

Some science teachers educate students on the topic of chemistry.

The students were educated at a private school.

“You’ll need to be properly educated before you can enter the workforce,” the trainer told the students. “When you are educated, you’ll be awarded

the relevant certificates and qualifications that are needed to be eligible for jobs in this industry,” he added.

Noun: Education

A good education generally provides people with knowledge and experience that leads to opportunities.

Embarrass

1. cause (someone) to feel awkward, self-conscious, or ashamed.

“embarrass” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+embarrass+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Embarrass someone or some group

I get embarrassed by the sound of my voice coming out of speakers when I have to address a room full of people.

He revealed her secret to the public, and she was deeply embarrassed as a result.

“Everyone will laugh at my naked and it’ll be very embarrassing for me,” one teenager told his other, in reference to shower-time at the school camp.

Noun: Embarrassment

The juggler feigned embarrassment after he dropped the balls.

Employ

1. give work to (someone) and pay them for it.
2. make use of.

“employ” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+employ+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Employ someone to do something
Employed by someone
Employ someone for + time period
Employ something (like a method or technique)

I'm not employed by my father.

She was employed on a casual basis for an oil company for 2 years, before joining the media department of a gas company.

Some actors employ a technique that enables them to recall past memories in order produce the emotion needed for a scene.

"We need to employ a reliable and dedicated worker," the manager told his assistants.

Noun: Employment

A lot of jobs require candidates to have at least 2 years of experience in a similar role before they're considered for employment.

Empty

1. remove all the contents of (a container).

"empty" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+empty+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Empty something

I empty the trash every Thursday evening.

She emptied the fish tank to give it a thorough clean.

"I think we'll need to empty the rubbish bin before we usually do," a woman told her housemate.

"Why's that?"

"Because we had a big party last night, and the bin is nearly full."

Encourage

1. give support, confidence, or hope to (someone).
2. persuade (someone) to do or continue to do something by giving support and advice.
3. stimulate the development of (an activity, state, or belief).

“encourage” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+encourage+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Encourage someone

Encourage someone to do something

As a teacher, I need to encourage students to give their best efforts to achieve the maximum benefits.

She was struggling to finish the marathon, but her trainer was encouraging her from the sidelines.

“We’re not going to make you eat your vegetables,” the parents told their child. “But we encourage you to think about whether this will affect your chances of getting some dessert.”

Noun: Encouragement

Some people don’t have the experience, social skills, or personality traits that allow them to learn certain things quickly. **Rather than** belittling or scolding them into getting better results, a more effective strategy would be to give them some encouragement.

End

1. come or bring to a final point; finish.

“end” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+end+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

End something

The deal ends at midnight tonight, so please come before then if you want to take advantage of our great sale prices.

"I can't believe the film ended with the main character dying," one disappointed moviegoer said to the other.

She wanted to buy a cheap pair of shoes, but the sale had ended.

They constantly argued, so it came as no surprise to mutual friends that their relationship ended.

Noun: End

They can't travel any further, because they've reached the end of the road.

Enjoy

1. take delight or pleasure in (an activity or occasion).
2. possess and benefit from.

"enjoy" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+enjoy+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Enjoy something

Enjoy something with someone

I play football every chance I get because it's fun to play, and I rarely have free time to enjoy it.

He's intelligent because he enjoys reading a lot of academic books.

She'll enjoy watching the sunset in Santorini.

Noun: Enjoyment

There's no point in continuing to do in an activity that gives you no enjoyment.

Enter

1. come or go into (a place).
2. begin to be involved in.

“enter” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+enter+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Enter something

Enter into something (phrasal verb) (to begin to be involved into something like a contract or agreement)

I won't enter any competition that discriminates against minority groups.

She entered the lobby via the main entrance.

It's unwise to enter into a contract without thoroughly reading the terms and conditions.

Entertain

1. provide (someone) with amusement or enjoyment.
2. provide (someone) with amusement or enjoyment.

“entertain” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+entertain+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Entertain someone

Entertain something (like a proposal, I.e. consider accepting a proposal) **(phrasal verb)**

A good stage performer must be able to entertain audiences night after night.

The rock band played well and the audience were entertained.

I find tennis a little boring, but most of my friends think the sport is very entertaining.

I won't entertain the notion that the Earth is flat. Science has shown us that this suggestion is ridiculous.

Noun: Entertainment

I wonder how many people are addicted to short videos on YouTube despite complaining about a lack of quality entertainment.

Escape

1. break free from confinement or control.
2. fail to be noticed or remembered by (someone).

"escape" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+escape+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Escape someone or something

Escape from someone or something

I don't ever want to go to prison, but if I were in prison, I don't think I'd attempt to escape.

The criminals escaped from the prison through an underground tunnel.

She thinks the lion will chase down the gazelle, but the gazelle is going to escape.

Noun: Escape

The guard expected to see the prisoner in his cell, but the prisoner had made an escape and was nowhere to be found.

Examine

1. inspect (someone or something) thoroughly in order to determine their nature or condition.
2. test the knowledge or proficiency of (someone) by requiring them to answer questions or perform tasks.

“examine” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+examine+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Examine something (like a crime scene or a report)

The lead investigator in a crime examines evidence and interviews suspects and witnesses.

The medical team examined the body to determine the cause of death.

“She’ll need to examine the survey then made a decision,” the secretary of a member of parliament told a concerned citizen.

Noun: Examiner

The medical examiner conducted a thorough investigation to determine the cause of death.

Excite

1. cause (someone) to feel very enthusiastic and eager.
2. give rise to (a feeling or reaction).

“excite” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+excite+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Excite someone

Be excited by someone or something

I’m excited to be around friendly people who like to try new things.

She was a big fan of classical music, and as such, she was very excited to go to the opera.

The couple were excited to tell people that they were expecting a baby.

The stuntman will excite the crowd by flying over 10 buses while on a motorcycle.

Noun: Excitement

The girl loved hip-hop music. When her parents told her she could go to the concert she could not contain her excitement.

Excuse

1. seek to lessen the blame attaching to (a fault or offence); try to justify.
2. release (someone) from a duty or requirement.

“excuse” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+excuse+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Excuse oneself or someone else

“Please excuse me, I need to be somewhere else,” the man said to his surprised host.

“But you’ve only just arrived.” the host said.

“I know. I’m sorry. I forgot about another engagement and it’s actually very important that I attend.”

“Excuse me, excuse me, sorry, sorry, excuse me,” the man said as he bumped past several people in the venue. “I need to get to the front of the stage,” he added.

The man was excused from the meeting because he had to attend a funeral.

Noun: Excuse

The woman arrived 20 minutes late to work and her boss gave her a warning. She insisted that the traffic made her late, but her boss said it wasn’t a satisfactory excuse for being late.

Exercise

1. use or apply (a faculty, right, or process).

- engage in physical activity to sustain or improve health and fitness.

“exercise” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+exercise+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Exercise one’s body or mind

Exercise power

Some superheroes exercise the power of speed and strength, while other superheroes exercise the power to vanish or breath under water, among other things.

I exercised in the gym for 2 hours today.

The athlete exercised to keep his body in good shape.

I hope the next President will exercise his or her power to withdraw troops from foreign territories, despite pressure from other prominent leaders who support failing foreign policies.

Noun: Exercise

I don’t feel at my best if I don’t get the right amount of sleep, quality food, and exercise.

Exist

- have objective reality or being.
- live, especially under adverse conditions.

“exist” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+exist+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

To exist

I wonder how many stars exist.

The dinosaurs existed for thousands of years, and died millions of years before humans existed.

We won't live long enough to see humans prosper on another planet. If we make it into outer space, we will probably be half human half robot creatures.

Noun: Existence

It's believed that there are many undiscovered species of insects in existence today.

Expand

1. become or make larger or more extensive.

"expand" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+expand+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Expand something (real or abstract)

My waistline is expanding, so I'll have to **go on a diet**.

The company recently expanded their portfolio because there is a lot of demand for their services.

The man felt his jeans were a little tight around his waist, but the salesperson assured him the jeans would expand.

Noun: Expansion

The investors of the multi-million dollar shopping mall were worried that the mall's expansion would not be completed on schedule.

Expect

1. regard (something) as likely to happen.
2. regard (someone) as likely to do or be something.
3. believe that (someone or something) will arrive soon.

“expect” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+expect+meaning> (29
September, 2021)

Expect something

Expect someone

Expect someone to do something

I expect to see South Americans and Europeans dominate world soccer rankings for quite some time.

She expected the comedy movie to be funny, but it wasn't.

We expect that our friends will be arriving very shortly.

If the strike lasts longer than a week, the striking workers will expect a raise in salary and an agreement that guarantees safer working conditions.

Noun: Expectation

This year I have low expectations of my football team, because they lost a lot of good players at the end of last year.

Explain

1. make (an idea or situation) clear to someone by describing it in more detail or revealing relevant facts.
2. give a reason so as to justify or excuse (an action or event).
3. be the cause of or motivating factor for.

“explain” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+explain+meaning> (29
September, 2021)

Explain something to someone or some group

Please listen while I explain the rules of the game.

The lecturer explained his theory to his students.

Maybe there are some natural phenomena that will always be hard to explain.

Noun: Explanation

My boss wants to know why I didn't contribute to the project. I didn't get anything done because I was busy dreaming about my next holiday, but I don't think my boss will like that explanation.

Explode

1. burst or shatter violently and noisily as a result of rapid combustion, excessive internal pressure, or other process.
2. (of a violent emotion or a situation) arise or develop suddenly.

"explode" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+explode+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Explode something

I like to watch fireworks explode into thousands of little specks of light.

They were making good time in their car until the engine exploded.

The bomb exploded, destroying several buildings.

I'm going to take notes in the next meeting, because the last guy who took notes created a marketing campaign that exploded on social media and won the company a lot of praise.

Noun: Explosion

A massive bomb went off, and the rumbling from the explosion could be felt 500kms away.

Extend

1. cause to cover a wider area; make larger.
2. hold (something) out towards someone.

"extend" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+extend+meaning> (29 September, 2021)

Extend something

It's probably too late to ask my professor to extend the project deadline.

A lot of the workers were falling behind on the project, so their supervisor extended the deadline.

The flower will extend toward the sun when the sun shines on it.

Noun: Extension

I don't think I'll be able to finish all of my homework before the deadline, so I'm going to ask for an extension. A one week extension would give me plenty of time to finish my homework.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

rather than

'Rather than' reveals our preference for something while excluding less favourable options:

"I'll travel on a bus rather than a plane, because I have a fear of flying."

Rather than constantly accusing others of doing the wrong thing, why don't you offer a solution or come up with some ideas?

I'm not feeling very energetic today. I think I'll go to the library rather than the amusement park.

Rather than watch sport on tv all summer, I decided to join an actual club so I can get some exercise and meet new friends.

I think she's feeling quite festive, because she's decided to put up decorations and sing Christmas Carols rather than surf the net like she usually does.

to try new things

It's well understood by many of you currently reading or listening, that 'to try' is 'to give good effort' but we can also use it in the sense of experimentation. To try something is to admit that you are unsure about what results your application or experimentation will reveal, but you'd like to find out:

Have you tried the sponge cake from that new little café? It's delicious.

I don't know how to program the new tv either. Have you tried searching YouTube for a video that explains it?

In the sense of giving effort:

I'll try to finish my essay by midnight, but I think I'll run out of time.

I'll try to contact Maggie and let her know that one of her cows has escaped from the paddock.

as such

'As such' is something we might use preceding some extra information which helps provide the exact meaning the speaker was trying to convey. It may be useful, therefore, when trying to clear up any possible ambiguity or misunderstanding that the listener is at risk of perceiving.

"Why do you have a cut on your face?"

"I was a little bit rushed and distracted this morning. As such, I tried to shave a little too quickly and ended up cutting my chin."

"Why is he upset?"

"He didn't realise the match started an hour earlier today, and as such he was sat in a café when it started. He's upset that he missed the first hour."

"Why is your dog sick?"

"He had his head poked out of the car window all the way to the beach. The wind was strong and cold, and as such, it appears to have given him a cold."

The manual contains a lot of important safety information. As such, you'll have to read each page carefully and you may be asked to do a knowledge assessment test.

go on a diet

Our regular eating habits are also referred to as our 'diet', but we use the preposition 'on' in combination with 'a diet' typically to relay that we're modifying our normal eating routine in order to achieve a particular health benefit and / or change our physical appearance.

I'm 10 kilograms overweight. I need to go on a diet.

He's now on the carnivore diet consisting only of meat, so there's no point offering him fruit and vegetables.

She's going to go on a diet because she wants to be slim enough to fit into her wedding dress in 3 months' time.

The contestant will go on a diet, and if he loses more weight than the other contestants, he'll be the winner of the competition.

F



Face

1. be positioned with the face or front towards (someone or something).
2. confront and deal with or accept a difficult or unpleasant task, fact, or situation.

“face” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+face+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Face something (like a challenge / obstacle)

Face up to something (phrasal verb) (to confront a difficult situation)

I can face danger more easily when my body is surging with adrenalin.

He was terrified of swimming, but knew he would have to face his fear sooner or later.

She'll have to turn around and face her mother eventually, instead of sulking like a spoiled child.

Noun: Face

I think it's going to be hot tomorrow. I'll have to remember to put sunscreen on my face if I go to the beach.

Fade

1. gradually grow faint and disappear.

“fade” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fade+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fade (away) (from one's senses, I.e. sense of sight / hearing / taste / touch / smell)

Fade into

If I look closely at a rainbow for long enough, I can notice it fade away.

She liked watching the sunlight fade into the darkness.

“The electricity won’t be activated until 7pm. Don’t worry if the bedroom light is too bright – you’ll be able to turn a knob to fade it,” the homeowner told the new guests.

Fail

1. be unsuccessful in achieving one's goal.
2. neglect to do something.

“fail” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fail+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fail something (like a task / test)

Fail to do something

I usually fail exams because I never do the necessary study to prepare for them.

She failed to understand what her instructor had told her.

Some people will succeed in achieving their goals, while others will fail.

Noun: Failure

I firmly believe that if you try your best and you treat people fairly and compassionately, then you shouldn’t listen to anyone who calls you a failure.

Fancy

1. feel a desire or liking for.
2. regard (a horse, team, or player) as a likely winner.

“fancy” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fancy+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fancy someone

Fancy something (like a suggestion)

I fancy the woman who works at the local café.

He knew that he should've brushed his teeth and gone to bed, but he fancied eating some chocolate for dessert first.

She doesn't care too much about a man's appearance. If he is thoughtful, intelligent, funny, and creative, she'll most likely fancy him.

"It's such a hot day today. Do you fancy a swim," the woman asked the man.

Fasten

1. close or do up securely.

"fasten" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fasten+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fasten someone or something

If you're moving to a new home, it's important to fasten your furniture inside the moving truck so things don't slide around and get damaged.

They fastened their seat belts.

He fastened the straps on his life-jacket because he wanted it to be secure.

Noun: Fastener

The plumber had a wide knowledge of the different types of fasteners needed for repair and maintenance of household pipes.

Fax

1. send (a document) by fax.

“fax” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fax+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fax something (like a document)

I know there are some companies in Japan that continue to fax documents instead of sending emails.

We faxed the letter to you; it should have come through your fax machine.

They’ll need to fax the certificates before tomorrow evening if they don’t want to miss the application deadline.

Noun: Fax

My internet is not working properly this week and I can’t receive any emails, so please just send me a fax.

Fear

1. be afraid of (someone or something) as likely to be dangerous, painful, or harmful.

“fear” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fear+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fear something or someone

I fear that I’ll be bitten by a snake if I go camping without appropriate footwear.

She feared the politicians would ruin the country, because **both parties** were more interested in smear campaigns than arguing for progressive policies.

Police fear the gunman will start taking hostages.

Noun: Fear

The emotion I usually feel while watching horror movies, is fear.

Fence

1. surround or protect with a fence.

“fence” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fence+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fence (an area)

“Can you fence my property with an electric fence? I want to stop naughty kids entering my front yard and stepping on my garden?” a man asked a landscape gardener.

The farmer fenced his property to keep foxes and other predators from attacking his animals.

“We’ll have to fence the perimeter to make it difficult for enemy combatants to travel this way,” the officer told the soldiers.

Noun: Fence

When my brother and I were younger we played cricket in our backyard. Sometimes we had to climb the fence to retrieve tennis balls we’d hit into our neighbour’s yard.

Fetch

1. go for and then bring back (someone or something) for someone.
2. achieve (a particular price) when sold.

“fetch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fetch+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fetch something

My dog is cute, but he can't fetch the balls I throw for him to collect.

The dog fetched the ball.

The dog was well trained – it could not only fetch a stick, but it could fetch the newspaper from the front yard and bring it to his owner.

File

1. place (a document) in a cabinet, box, or folder in a particular order.

"file" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+file+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

File something (like documents, or a report)

"We need you to make a lot of files, but you also need to make clear labels and categories for them, otherwise we'll still be confused about where to look when we need them," the senior secretary told the staff member.

She filed the papers in alphabetical order in order to avoid confusion later on.

The man is going to file a lawsuit against his attacker.

Noun: File

You asked me earlier about directions to the Convention Centre. Please open your email and find the relevant details in the attached file.

Fill

1. cause (a space or container) to become full or almost full.
2. become an overwhelming presence in; pervade.

“fill” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fill+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fill something

Fill in (phrasal verb) (to take the place of someone or something so that a space can be filled).

Kids can be very cheeky. Once, when I was young, my friends and I filled a washing machine with loose cement.

He filled his suitcase with clothes, then called a taxi to take him to the airport.

The teacher asked the students to fill in the gaps in sentences with words from a list.

Film

1. capture on film as part of a series of moving images; make a film of (a story, event, or book).

“film” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+film+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Film something

I film myself talking about English grammar, and then upload the footage to my social media account.

The cameraman filmed the actors in the scene.

I hope, while on Safari, I’ll be able to see a lion chasing a gazelle, and film the incident with my new camera.

Noun: Film

We went to the cinema on the weekend and saw a very good film.

Fire

1. discharge a gun or other weapon in order to propel (a bullet or projectile).
2. dismiss (an employee) from a job

“fire” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fire+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fire something (like a gun or a rocket)

Fire someone (from a job)

Fire up (phrasal verb) (to get angry and feel motivated).

I have a friend who fired a potato shooter over a farmyard fence to scare some cows.

She fired her lazy employee and hired a reliable worker to fill the vacancy.

He fired the gun into the air several times.

“They’ll have to fire up if they want to reduce the margin in the second half,” a football supporter said to his friend.

Noun: Fire

We collected wood and made a fire near the campsite. We cooked marshmallows over the fire.

Fit

1. be of the right shape and size for.
2. install or fix (something) into place.

“fit” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fit+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fit something into something

Fit someone (into clothing)

Fit in (phrasal verb) (to feel a sense of comfort and belonging).

I can't fit into the shirt I bought 3 years ago. I must've **put on** a lot of weight.

The tailor fitted the groom in a bespoke suit.

"We're not going to fit in if we're dressed in casual attire," the woman told her husband as they prepared for the fancy dinner party.

Noun: Fit

I used to have some unhealthy habits, but now I go to the gym and eat well. These new, healthy habits have helped me get fit.

Fix

1. fasten (something) securely in a particular place or position.
2. mend or repair.

"fix" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fix+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fix something

My father used to tell me, "Don't try to fix something if it's not broken."

She fixed the broken machine.

The coffee machine hasn't been working for 3 days, and nobody knows how to fix it.

Noun: Fix

Some problems require a lot of time and hard work to be resolved. Unfortunately there is no quick-fix.

Flap

1. (of a bird) move (its wings) up and down when flying or preparing to fly.

“flap” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+flap+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Flap something (like wings)

I wish I could grow wings to flap, and fly high above my town.

The bird flapped it's wings and flew away.

The campers will have to flap the air with towels to keep the insects away.

Noun: Flap

I wish my dog could walk through the small flap in the door in order to let himself in and out of the house.

Flash

1. shine in a bright but brief, sudden, or intermittent way.
2. move or pass very quickly.

“flash” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+flash+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Flash something (like a light)

“Don’t flash the light in my eyes!” The student pleaded to the school bully, who used a laser to terrorise kids in the playground.

He flashed the torch toward the trees in the hope of finding a koala at night.

It was very dark, so she flashed the torch on the tent in an effort to find the zipper.

Noun: Flash

The photo was too dark because the flash was not turned on when the photo was taken.

Float

1. rest or move on or near the surface of a liquid without sinking.
2. move or hover slowly and lightly in a liquid or the air; drift.

“float” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+float+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Float (in / on water or air)

Round, solid objects tend not to float in water.

She was able to float in the water because the water contained a very high level of salt.

He threw the briefcase overboard to see if it would sink or float in the ocean.

It sank, and his friend who owned the briefcase became very angry, very quickly.

Flood

1. cover or submerge (an area) with water in a flood.
2. arrive in overwhelming amounts or quantities.

“flood” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+flood+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Flood (an area) **with something**

It's been 20 years since I saw a flood.

The town was flooded because there had been several days of heavy rainfall.

If she forgets to turn off the faucet in the bathtub, she'll flood the bathroom.

Noun: Flood

Several community members' homes were damaged in the flood.

Flow

1. (of a liquid, gas, or electricity) move steadily and continuously in a current or stream.
2. go from one place to another in a steady stream, typically in large numbers.

"flow" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+flow+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Flow (+ preposition of place) somewhere or something

I like to sit in the shallow creek near my home and flow downstream.

A stream of words flowed from his mouth as he gave an inspiring speech.

She'll drop her hat in the river and watch it flow downstream.

Noun: Flow

A steady flow of insults were hurled towards the heckler, while other audience members laughed.

Flower

1. (of a plant) produce flowers; bloom.
2. be in or reach an optimum stage of development; develop fully and richly.

“flower” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+flower+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

To flower

I wonder if plants will still flower if they’re subjected to **an unusually large amount** of rainfall.

The plants flowered early; usually they flower in Spring, but this year they flowered in late winter.

I hope her personality flowers as fully and beautifully as her intellect.

Noun: Flower

The flowers usually look most colourful after blooming in the springtime.

Fold

1. bend (something flexible and relatively flat) over on itself so that one part of it covers another.
2. cover or wrap something in (a soft or flexible material).

“fold” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fold+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fold something

Fold something up (phrasal verb) (to fold something back to its original position, or to be made neater and more compact).

Fold under pressure (phrasal verb) (to be unable to perform a task due to anxiety felt in response to pressure).

The golfer seemed to fold under the pressure. He led the game on the final hole of the final round, but couldn’t sink an easy putt to win the tournament.

The retailer folded the shirts and put them on the shelf for customers to see.

He’ll neatly fold up the clothes and put them into the wardrobe.

Follow

1. go or come after (a person or thing proceeding ahead); move or travel behind.
2. come after in time or order.

“follow” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+follow+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Follow someone or something

I find it difficult to follow the plot of some mystery films that show characters’ dreams and reality overlapping.

He followed the instructions given to him by his boss.

If we follow the example of tyrants, we will become tyrants too.

Fool

1. trick or deceive (someone); dupe.

“fool” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fool+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fool someone

To be fooled by someone or something

Fool me once, shame on you. Fool me twice, shame on me.

We’re often fooled by politicians, because we naively believe they are telling us the truth.

She’s not going to be happy when she finds out that he fooled her.

Noun: Fool

She was a fool to fall for that man, because it was clear to everyone else that he was a liar and a bore.

Force

1. make a way through or into by physical strength; break open by force.
2. make (someone) do something against their will.

“force” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+force+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Force something to happen

Force someone to do something

I can't force someone to eat something they don't want to eat.

The boxer was hit with a flurry of punches and forced into the corner of the boxing ring.

The racer made **an illegal overtaking move** and was forced to take a 10 second penalty.

Her suitcase is almost completely full, but she'll force her remaining clothes into it and manage to zip it shut.

Noun: Force

She was very angry, so she went to the gym to vent her frustrations. She put on some gloves then hit a punching bag with great force.

Form

1. bring together parts or combine to create (something).
2. make or be made into a specific shape or form.

“form” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+form+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Form something (like a line)

I don't like being asked to form a line when there's only me and one other person waiting.

The two men formed a business partnership and started looking for customers.

The water is going to leak from the gutter and form a big puddle on the ground.

Noun: Form

There are many different forms of transport that people can use to get from one place to another.

Frame

1. place (a picture or photograph) in a frame.
2. formulate (a concept, plan, or system).

“frame” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+frame+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Frame something (real or conceptual)

Frame someone (for a crime they didn't commit)

I respect public speakers who are able to frame their questions in ways that show their desire for more knowledge and better perspectives, rather than framing questions in a way that attempts to trick the listener in order to make an opinion seem more compelling.

She painted the painting, and then framed it.

The suspect said there was incriminating evidence against him because he'd been framed.

She's mounting a convincing argument, because she's framing her argument around empirical evidence, while her opponent is relying on gossip and conjecture.

Noun: Frame

The thick, brown frame was so big that it actually made the painting inside it look smaller than it otherwise would have.

Frighten

1. make (someone) afraid or anxious.
2. deter someone or something from involvement or action by making them afraid.

"frighten" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+frighten+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Frighten someone

Be frightened by someone or something

Although I live in a country with a lot of poisonous spiders, the sight of a spider does not frighten me.

She leapt out from behind the door and frightened her unsuspecting sister.

He's going to wear a gory costume, which will look very frightening.

Fry

1. cook (food) in hot fat or oil, typically in a shallow pan.

"fry" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+fry+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Fry something (usually food to be eaten)

I like to fry noodles and vegetables on a frying pan.

They used vegetable oil to fry the potatoes.

He'll fry the egg in the pan.

Noun: Fryer

We put some potato chips in the fryer and fried them. They were tasty, but next time I'll use more oil to make the fries more crispy.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

both parties

'Both' is a word that tells us there are two individuals, groups, categories or things etc. that have been included together in a specific context. A party is generally synonymous with a party or celebration, but in this context it refers to an individual or group. So, the use of 'both parties' puts the focus on the set of two individuals or groups who happen to be relevant. It's often used to impart a high level of importance, thus it's routinely heard in legal or political discussions, and as such tends to sound a little more formal. If a situation demands more seriousness or respect it can be because there's a disagreement that requires handling with some sensitivity – the sort that might urge one to use this language.

Most of the time the two major political parties were only interested in blaming each other, but on this occasion, both parties condemned the latest terrorist attack.

The legal teams represented the husband and wife, respectively, in the divorce proceedings. Both parties tried their best to reach a settlement so that the dispute wouldn't have to be resolved in court.

The players and administrators negotiated a pay dispute. While neither party was willing to make any concessions, both parties agreed to end their bickering before the start of the season.

The union leaders argued for safer working conditions for all employees, while the company executives said they could not make any changes due to budget constraints. Both parties were unwilling to compromise their position, and eventually the workers went on strike.

put on

'Put on' can be used in more than one way. The way we see it used in this eBook is in reference to gaining weight. It can be used in positive and negative ways. It can be used in a negative way, for example:

You've put on a lot of weight recently. You should eat less junk food.

I'm exercising and not eating much, and I'm still putting on weight. What am I doing wrong?

Or it can be used to suggest that one would like to gain some extra weight, typically by adding muscle.

I want to put on 5kgs of muscle and then sign up with a modelling agency.

The female boxer wants to put on 3kgs of muscle to qualify for a heavier weight division.

We can also refer to ourselves in regards to getting dressed:

I put on a jacket and gloves when the weather started getting cold.

The day is getting quite hot. I think I'll put on some shorts and flip-flops.

Here are some other phrasal verbs with the word 'put':

Put through something, as in forced to endure something difficult:

That was very distressing. Please don't put me through that again.

The army sergeant put the troops through an intense physical regime.

Put out, in a literal sense:

Can you please put the bins out on the nature strip. The garbage truck will come to empty them early tomorrow morning.

She put out a video declaring her intention to quit social media.

Put out, as in being inconvenienced:

I don't mean to put you out, but are you able to give me a ride to the medical clinic this morning?

We're sorry to put you out, but we need to turn off your electricity for an hour in order to do scheduled maintenance.

Put on, in a literal sense:

I put the hot mug of coffee on the table, and unfortunately the base of the mug stained the surface of the table.

He put an offensive sticker on his car, and his car was vandalised shortly after.

Put on, as in which behaviour or facial expression to present to others:

I could tell he was in pain when the dentist extracted his teeth, but he put on a brave face.

He was a little sad to hear that his ex-girlfriend was dating another man, but he didn't want others to know his true feelings, so he put on a happy face when he heard the news.

As in, an exhibition or performance:

Most people expected the event to be quite boring, but the event organisers and performers put on a great show.

The band reformed and put on a big concert in the Royal Botanic Gardens.

Put into, in terms of an abstract quality that goes into something:

How well you do on your project depends on how much effort you put into it.

She wasn't surprised to get a bad grade on her exam, because she knew she didn't put a lot of effort into her studies.

Put off, in terms of delay or postpone:

I know I should start writing my novel, but I keep putting it off.

I shouldn't put off my assignment any longer – it needs to be completed quite soon.

As in, causing a loss of interest or enthusiasm:

She decided not to apply for the job. She thought the role sounded interesting, but she was put off by the inconvenient hours she would've had to work.

I enjoyed the romantic subplot in the movie, but I was a little put off by the amount of unnecessary violence.

an unusually large amount

We sometimes use an adverb with an adjective to give extra information about the noun. Something can not only be large, for example, it can be large to the extent that it's a little unusual for one to see. Take a look at some ways you might see adverbs and adjectives placed together to give a little more information or emphasis.

*The author describes the **fascinatingly unique relationship** between an astronaut and an alien.*

*Walking between two skyscrapers on a thin beam is an **extremely dangerous stunt**.*

*A lot of people went to her for advice because she was an **exceptionally wise woman**.*

*The **brilliantly designed castle** was sold for more two and a half million dollars.*

an illegal (overtaking) move

We can also see two adjectives together when more information is needed for us to get an accurate depiction. There's nothing reckless to acknowledge in a story of a crazy driver who completes an overtaking move, but the picture becomes clearer when we consider it was an illegal overtaking move. Take a look at some other examples that use the 'ing' form to help describe the noun that follows it:

*His recent, excellent form against the other team helped him achieve a **massive batting average**.*

*She worked night shift and drove a forklift at a **fruit processing factory**.*

*She quit her job as a data analyst and starting working for a **successful logging company**.*

*He was a regular customer at the **popular tanning salon**.*

Although

The use of 'although' let's us know that the details of one part of a sentence have some relationship to another, and the extra information can help clarify a potential misunderstanding. It can be a way for the speaker to add a key detail or details so that there's no misinterpretation.

He's memorised a lot of recipes, although he's not a very good cook.

I have fun doing some winter activities, although I prefer to relax near a beach, sipping cocktails in the summertime.

She works out 5 days a week, although she tends to undo a lot of good work by rewarding herself with too much junk food on weekends.

Although I have a fear of heights, I managed to face my fear and go skydiving with a few friends.

G



Gather

1. come together; assemble or accumulate.
2. bring together and take in from scattered places or sources.

“gather” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+gather+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Gather something or some people

“I think it’s important that we gather together and remain in the basement until the tornado is gone,” the family member said.

He was under pressure to deliver a good speech, and despite being quite worried, he managed to **gather his thoughts** and speak confidently.

She’ll gather the documents and put them in the briefcase.

Gaze

1. look steadily and intently, especially in admiration, surprise, or thought.

“gaze” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+gaze+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Gaze at something

You can hurt your eyes if you try and gaze at the sun.

He gazed through the window and saw the parade marching down the street.

She’ll gaze into his eyes and think she’s falling in love.

Noun: Gaze

I couldn’t hold my gaze on the moon, because the moon was intermittently obscured by the clouds floating in front of it.

Glow

1. give out steady light without flame.

“glow” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+glow+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Glow in the dark

I like the little stickers that stick to the bedroom ceiling and glow at night.

The moonlight glowed brightly and cast a beautiful reflection on the surface of the ocean.

The light from the candle was glowing against the wall.

Noun: Glow

The glow from the light lit up the room.

Glue

1. an adhesive substance used for sticking objects or materials together.

“glue” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+glue+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Glue something

Glue something onto something

Sometimes my fingers get sticky when I try to glue two small items together.

The vase broke, but he was able to glue it **back together**.

She'll run out of sticky tape, so she'll have to glue the poster instead.

Noun: Glue

The tea cup broke into several pieces, but I was able to reassemble it using a good-quality glue.

Grab

1. grasp or seize suddenly and roughly.

"grab" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+grab+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Grab something

Grab onto something

Grab attention (phrasal verb) (to get someone's attention)

I grab my jacket and throw it in my car whenever I drive on cold days.

The boy grabbed a handful of sand and threw it at his brother.

I anticipate that the monkeys in the distance will grab tree branches and swing from one branch to another.

Noun: Grab

He made a quick grab for the cookie, but his mother pulled it away, out of his reach.

Grate

1. reduce (food) to small shreds by rubbing it on a grater.
2. make an unpleasant rasping sound.

"grate" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+grate+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Grate something

Grate on someone (to annoy someone)

It grates me when people talk inside a cinema during the movie.

She grated the cheese.

The chef will grate some cheese, then sprinkle it over the spaghetti.

Noun: Grater

I shredded the cheese with a grater.

Grease

1. smear or lubricate with grease.

“grease” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+grease+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Grease something

I have never had any desire to grease my body with coconut oil.

We greased the pan so the cake would not stick to the bottom.

The mechanic is going to grease the chain on my motorcycle.

Noun: Grease

The mechanic put some grease on the chain to lubricate it and make sure it wasn't too stiff.

Greet

1. give a polite word of recognition or sign of welcome when meeting (someone).
2. receive or acknowledge (something) in a specified way.

3. (especially of a sight or sound) become apparent to (a person arriving somewhere).

“greet” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+greet+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Greet someone or some people

Be greeted by something / someone / some people

“If I don’t greet the professor as he arrives at the conference, I might miss the chance to meet him,” the starstruck student said.

She greeted the guests as they arrived at the party.

The concierge will greet the couple when they arrive at the hotel.

Grin

1. smile broadly.

“grin” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+grin+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Grin at someone or something

I used to grin at people on public transport, but now – with everyone wearing masks – it seems pointless.

The man smiled at her, so she grinned back.

The boy got a lot of presents for his birthday, which caused him to grin all day.

Noun: Grin

He didn’t think she had the best sense of humour, but he liked to make her smile because she had a beautiful grin.

Grip

1. take and keep a firm hold of; grasp tightly.
2. (of an emotion or situation) have a strong or adverse effect on.

"grip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+grip+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Grip something Grip onto something

I once gripped an apple **hard enough to** burst the skin and cause juice to squirt all over the floor.

The gymnast gripped the apparatus tightly so he wouldn't fall.

The mother is going to have to take the spoon from her baby, but the baby has gripped the spoon very well and doesn't want to let it go.

Noun: Grip

The designers decided make the shoes with a Velcro grip, so that elderly people could easily tighten them and take them off.

Groan

1. make a deep inarticulate sound conveying pain, despair, pleasure, etc.
2. (of an object) make a low creaking sound when pressure or weight is applied.

"groan" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+groan+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Groan at someone

Groan (voluntarily or involuntarily, physically or emotionally motivated)

I groan every time my father complains about tv commercials. "There's no use complaining," I tell him. "They're here to stay."

The train driver announced that the train would be stationary for a further 10 minutes, and everyone in the carriage groaned.

She won't say anything when her boss asks her to work on the weekend, she'll simply groan.

Noun: Groan

The old man was in a lot of pain. His groans could be heard from every room in the house whenever he tried to get out of bed.

Guarantee

1. provide a formal assurance, especially that certain conditions will be fulfilled relating to a product, service, or transaction.
2. promise with certainty.

"guarantee" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+guarantee+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Guarantee something to someone

I can't guarantee I won't crash a hire car, but the rental company needs to guarantee me that their car is roadworthy, and that their insurance will cover the cost of damage in the event of an accident.

The customer was sceptical about the quality of the product, but the salesman guaranteed it would function for at least 2 years.

She said she'll try to be at the meeting place on time, but she can't guarantee anything.

Noun: Guarantee

The manager was confident that every employee would receive a bonus at the end of the year, but he could not make any guarantees.

Guard

1. watch over in order to protect or control.

“guard” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+guard+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Guard something / someone

“I’d like to be able to guard the fort,” one child said to his playmate, “but I don’t think I have the energy. Perhaps if I were to have one of your mother’s choc-chip cookies, it may provide the spark of energy that I require.”

The soldiers guarded the front gates of the palace.

He was not worried about intruders entering his home, because he had an angry dog guarding his property.

Noun: Guard

The guard stood in front of the bank to protect the staff and customers and prevent a robbery.

Guess

1. estimate or conclude (something) without sufficient information to be sure of being correct.

“guess” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+guess+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Guess something

I guess it would take me more than a day to solve a Rubik’s Cube.

She wasn't sure about the answer, so she guessed.

His fellow students knew the answer to the equation, but he didn't, so he guessed.

Noun: Guess

I wasn't sure of answer, so I just wrote down my best guess.

Guide

1. show or indicate the way to (someone).
2. direct or influence the behaviour or development of.

"guide" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+guide+meaning> (30 September, 2021)

Guide oneself or someone else (in a particular direction)

I would like to guide you around the city of Melbourne if you ever come to this part of Australia.

He helped guide the driver of the car get through a very narrow road.

She will guide the plane safely to the ground.

Noun: Guide

The tour guide guided us from one historic monument to another, stopping along the way to enjoy some of the beautiful scenery.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

gather his thoughts

To 'gather one's thoughts' is to take the necessary steps to achieve a level of calm that allows one's mind to settle and thoughts to rearrange so that the most coherent, reasonable and logical conclusion can be drawn. It can also be used in situations where someone is asking for an answer which can't be given without more reflection.

Please ask me about that later. I haven't had time to gather my thoughts.

It's also, therefore, a way of showing that someone has been (or is) busy, and when more time is available an answer will be forthcoming.

I'm sorry, I've got a million things to do right now. Give me a chance to gather my thoughts and I'll get back to you.

He was struck on the head. Most people felt that he needed to take a few deep breaths and gather his thoughts, because he looked a little dazed and confused as a result of the impact.

She was quite sad and emotional after learning that her friends had been saying some nasty things about her about her behind her back. She soon calmed down, gathering her thoughts, and conceded that maybe there was some truth to what they'd said. Instead of confronting her friends, she committed to working on her flaws.

Upon realising he was sharing an elevator with his favourite movie star, he became flustered, then tried to gather his thoughts in an effort to say something interesting and make a good impression.

back together

'Back together' can be used in a couple of ways. It can be used in a literal or abstract way. We can see that things need to be 'put back together,' when being apart is not a satisfactory state for those separated pieces.

We need to put the broken vase back together. I think I can collect all the pieces and put it back together with super glue.

We can refer to a couple or some other entities that once formed a partnership, suggesting they get 'back together' after a period of

separation. Here are a couple of examples of that type, followed by a couple of examples in the literal sense:

They separated on bad terms. I don't think they'll be getting back together.

The band got back together, but they weren't able to produce the same quality of songs that were representative of earlier albums.

She threw his video game console over the balcony, and it smashed into several pieces. He wasn't able to put it back together.

My sunglasses fell off my face and landed on cement pavement. They smashed into three separate pieces and I wasn't able to put them back together.

hard enough to

We say 'enough' to mean some quality or quantity is sufficient. So, to refer to something as 'not hard enough' insists that it's functioning cannot be successful until an increase in hardness is applied.

The room was quite dark, but it wasn't dark enough for me to sleep. I'm a light sleeper and need a completely dark room to fall asleep.

The gazelle looked quite fast, but it wasn't fast enough to outrun the cheetah. The cheetah enjoyed its meal.

Many people questioned why the successful and charismatic man was still single. Basically, despite his success, he had a deep fear of rejection and wasn't bold enough to ask any women out on a date.

I'm excited for the last race of the season, but I'm not excited enough to stay up till 3am to watch it live. I'll just wake up and watch the replay in the morning.

H



Hammer

1. hit or beat (something) repeatedly with a hammer or similar object.

“hammer” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hammer+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hammer something

Hammer something into/onto something

Hammer out (phrasal verb x2) (to discuss some conflict with the intention of finding a resolution) (to work more efficiently – potentially without a break – to make sure work is completed)

I can hammer strips of wood together to make a fence.

The carpenter hammered the nail into the piece of wood.

We’ll have to hammer out this work if we want to get it finished before the deadline.

Noun: Hammer

The construction worker used his hammer to hit the nail into the piece of wood.

Hand

1. pick (something) up and give it to (someone).
2. hold the hand of (someone) in order to guide them in a specified direction.

“hand” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hand+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hand something to someone

Hand in (phrasal verb) (to give something to the rightful owner, or relevant authority)

Hand over (phrasal verb) (typically, to give something to someone, often with reluctance)

Hand out (phrasal verb) (to distribute something by hand)

He took the documents off the desk and handed them to his business partner.

"Why haven't you been given your grade," a mother asked her son.

"I haven't handed in my report yet," he said.

She'll need to hand the gun over to police, otherwise she'll be arrested for possessing a firearm.

"Please take a piece of A4 paper when I hand them out," the teacher told the students.

Noun: Hand

My fingers are attached to my hand.

Handle

1. feel or manipulate with the hands.
2. manage (a situation or problem).

"handle" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+handle+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Handle something (real or abstract)

"I hate it when my parents fight, but it's also difficult for me when they don't speak to each other – I can't handle the tension in the air," the man told his therapist.

He handled the transition from the old management style to the new management style very well.

The government will probably handle the criticism of their policy changes very poorly.

Noun: Handle

If you turn the handle on a door with no lock, then push or pull the door, it should open.

Happen

1. take place; occur.
2. find or come across by chance.

“happen” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+happen+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Happen to someone / something Happen due to someone / something

I happened on a street with three old theatres.

He knew the man had suffered an injury, but he wasn't sure what had happened.

A lot of destructive things have happened to the Earth since the Industrial Revolution.

Harass

1. subject to aggressive pressure or intimidation.
2. make repeated small-scale attacks on (an enemy).

“harass” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+harass+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Harass someone / something Be harassed by someone / something

I was harassed by a pack of dogs on a mountain in Taiwan.

Her boss sexually harassed her and she filed a lawsuit against him.

The famous actor felt that the paparazzi were harassing him, because they followed him everywhere he went.

Noun: Harassment

The woman thought she needed to either quit her job and/or take legal action against her employer, because she could no longer accept the workplace harassment she had endured.

Harm

1. physically injure.

“harm” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+harm+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Harm someone / something

Be harmed by someone / something

I don't think it's very kind to harm a child for eating someone else's cookie.

There are a lot of toxins being released into the air, which are harming the environment.

The passengers will be harmed when the car collides with oncoming traffic.

Noun: Harm

The waste that humans throw away has caused a lot of harm to our waterways and the animals that live in those waterways.

Hate

1. feel intense dislike for.

“hate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hate+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hate someone / something

I think hate is a strong word, so I try not to use it in moments of slight discomfort or annoyance, and rather reserve its use for things, people, or circumstances that really aggravate or torment me.

She hated making dinner, so most of the time she ordered food to be delivered to her home.

He'll hate me for saying this, but he puts his feet on the seats of public transport.

Noun: Hatred

The woman expressed her hatred for the government for its handling of the pandemic.

Haunt

1. (of a ghost) manifest itself at (a place) regularly.

“haunt” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+haunt+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Haunt someone

Be haunted by someone or something

I am haunted by a memory a dog getting hit by a car.

She was haunted by the memory of being attacked in her home.

He'll think the house is haunting him, because many mysterious and inexplicable things will occur when he goes inside.

Noun: Haunted

The house is haunted.

Head

1. be in the leading position on.
2. be in charge of.
3. direct or steer in a specified direction.
4. move in a specified direction.

“head” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+head+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Head something (like a meeting)

Head to (to go in the direction of)

Head out (phrasal verb) (to go out, usually from one’s home)

Head for some place (phrasal verb) (to go to a particular place)

I head the meetings at work, every third Monday.

She was offended by the guest speaker's comments, so she rose from her seat in the auditorium and headed for the nearest exit.

Let’s head out to the lake and watch people trying to parasail.

“We’ll head west as soon as the sun rises in the morning,” one cowboy said to the other.

Noun: Head

Many boxers suffer damage to the brain because they get hit in the head a lot.

Heal

1. cause (a wound, injury, or person) to become sound or healthy again.
2. become sound or healthy again.
3. alleviate (a person's distress or anguish).

“heal” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+heal+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Heal someone / something

I believe there are a lot of plants that can heal human diseases.

She took the medicine and her wound healed a few days later.

His best chance to heal will be with a combination of therapy and meditation.

Noun: Healer

Western countries tend to lack an appreciation for the knowledge and social importance of mystical healers in tribal societies.

Heat

1. make or become hot or warm.

“heat” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+heat+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Heat something

Heat something up (phrasal verb) (to make something hotter)

I heat my dinner in the oven, while my brother heats his meals in the microwave.

The sun heats the ocean in summer.

I think my car is going to overheat, because it doesn't have any water or coolant.

Noun: Heat

You will definitely want an air-conditioner inside your apartment if you live in a tropical part of Asia, because the heat is very strong.

Help

1. make it easier or possible for (someone) to do something by offering one's services or resources.

"help" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+help+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Help oneself / someone else

Help someone out (phrasal verb) (to help someone)

Help someone up (phrasal verb) (to help someone rise from a low position, in a literal, physical, or emotional sense)

I help myself to some sweets whenever I'm feeling a little depressed. It probably doesn't help me feel any better.

She was good at answering science-related questions, so she helped her brother with his science homework.

She'll help a lot of disadvantaged people **through her charity work**.

Noun: Help

I'm not very good at mathematics. I could use some help with my mathematics homework if anyone is willing to assist me.

Hook

1. attach or fasten with a hook or hooks.
2. catch with a hook.

"hook" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hook+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hook something

Hooked on something (phrasal verb) (to be addicted to something)

I hook paintings on walls for various production companies needing film sets designed.

The fisherman's rod hooked the fish through its mouth, and the fisherman began to reel it in.

The television show always had a dramatic hook at the end of each episode, in order to make the audience curious enough to watch the following episode.

Noun: Hook

I put a hook on the wall so I could hang the painting on it.

Hop

1. (of a person) move by jumping on one foot.

"hop" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hop+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hop (in a direction)

Hop in / out (phrasal verb) (to get in or out (or on or off) something which one can be inside; typically transport such as a car, bus, or train)

I hopped over a puddle to avoid splashing water **all over** my new jeans.

The little girl had injured her right foot, so she hopped all the way home from school on her left foot.

They'll hop into the car when it arrives to their home, and then hop out when they get to the sports stadium.

Hope

1. want something to happen or be the case.

“hope” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hope+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hope for something

I’m hoping to finish this document sometime between now and 2056.

He was hoping to receive a bike for his birthday, but he was not expecting one.

She’ll be expecting her first child 9 months after she gets pregnant, and no doubt will be hoping the government provides financial support to new mothers.

Hover

1. remain in one place in the air.

“hover” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hover+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hover over someone / something

I don’t think it’s very polite to hover over someone when they’re trying to eat a meal.

The vultures were hovering over the injured animal and waiting for it to die.

Most of the day will be very sunny, but in the afternoon a dark cloud will start to hover over the town.

Hug

1. squeeze (someone) tightly in one's arms, typically to express affection.

“hug” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hug+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hug someone / something
Be hugged by someone

I want to hug you for building this time machine, because now we can be transported to happier times.

She arrived at the party and hugged her friend.

He'll hug the widow at the funeral.

Noun: Hug

My grandmother always gives me a big hug whenever I see her.

Hum

1. make a low, steady continuous sound like that of a bee.

“hum” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hum+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hum a sound / tune

I hum a happy tune whenever I'm in a good mood.

She heard a song on the radio in the morning and then hummed the tune of the song for the rest of the day, which was very annoying for her colleagues.

They'll have to hum the ending of the song if they want to win the cash prize.

Noun: Hum

Sometimes the hum of a vacuum cleaner helps drown out other sounds and helps me get to sleep.

Hunt

1. pursue and kill (a wild animal) for sport or food.
2. search determinedly for someone or something.

“hunt” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hunt+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hunt someone / something (typically an animal)

I’m hunting an invasive species of rabbit that are proving to be pests in this part of the country.

The farmer hunted wild animals to provide food for his family.

It’ll continue to be necessary to hunt foxes in some farming communities because foxes still pose a threat to livestock in those areas.

Noun: Hunt

“How was the hunt?” the wife asked her husband when he returned from his hunting trip.

Hurry

1. move or act with great haste.

“hurry” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+hurry+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Hurry

Hurry up (phrasal verb) (to hurry)

I guess I’ll have to hurry if I want to get to the cinema before the movie starts.

She hurried to the hospital to be with her brother because he'd fallen off his motorcycle and injured himself.

He'll have to do overtime at work, which means he'll have to hurry to the restaurant for the anniversary dinner with his wife if he doesn't want to be late.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

through her charity work

We sometimes say 'through his/her charity work' before or after a set of experiences or achievements in order to confer that it is 'through' the paths offered by the specific charity that one has been able to achieve those described undertakings, or participate in the described experience.

He made a lot of friends through the cricket club.

She was able to help a lot of underprivileged people and groups through her philanthropy.

Through his work as a teacher, he supported and educated thousands of children, many of whom grew to be quite successful.

She inspired a lot of people through her sporting achievements.

all over

We can use 'all over' to refer to the entirety of a physical space. It is 'over' the entirety of this relevant space that 'all' of something now finds itself.

You spilt milk all over my suit! You're going to have to pay my dry-cleaning bill!

It can also take the word 'over' to make the combination refer to the end of a process; it's 'all over' means it's completely finished. 'All' just further emphasises the unambiguous completeness of the finality.

It's all over between the once happy couple. She's living in a house in rural Australia, and he's living in Morocco.

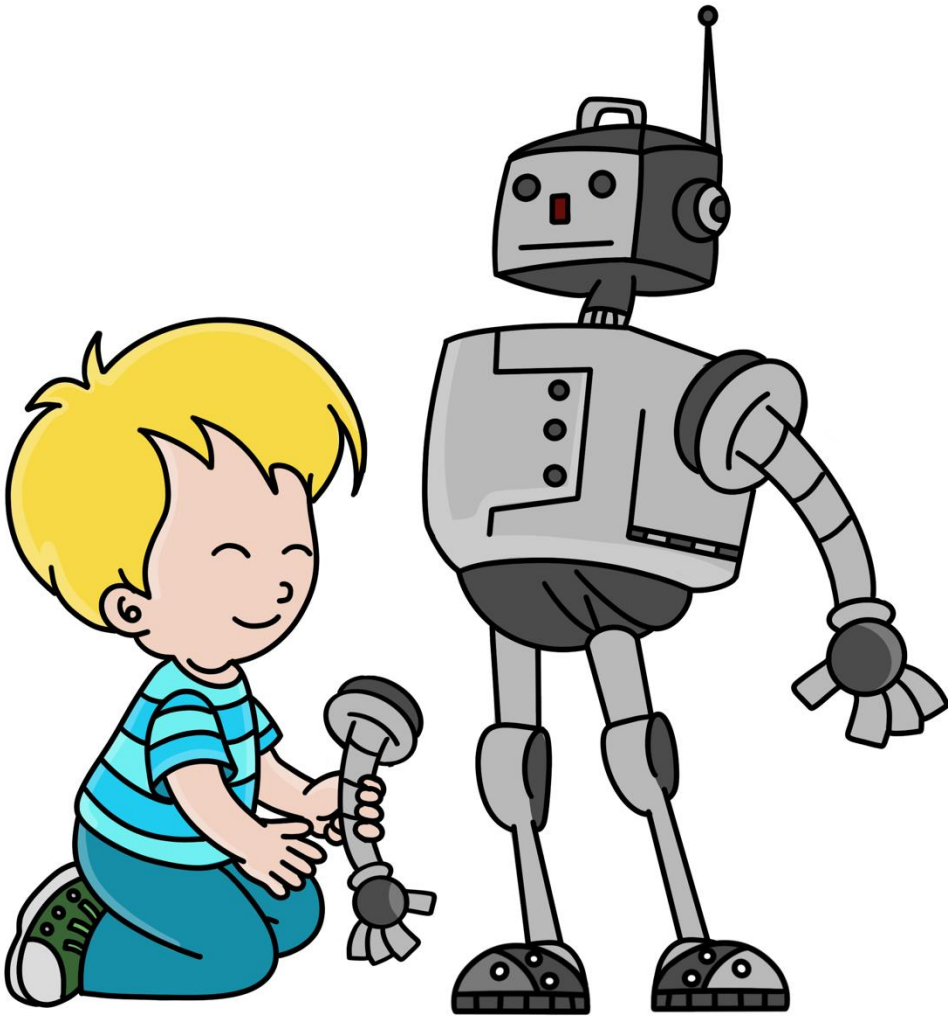
Here are a few more examples:

I expected the batting innings to last all day, but it was all over by 12pm.

When the young man reached a height of 6 feet before his 15th birthday, he realised his dream of becoming a jockey was all over.

She forgot to put a cover over her bowl of spaghetti, and spaghetti sauce splattered all over the top of the microwave.

The hurricane sent rubbish and debris all over the town.



Identify

1. establish or indicate who or what (someone or something) is.
2. associate someone or something closely with; regard as having strong links with.

“identity” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+identity+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Identify someone or something

I can't identify why I get so emotional when my football team loses.

The witness came into the police station and she identified the key suspect in the police line-up.

If he gets a microscope and a chemistry kit, he'll be able to identify the liquid that stained his shirt.

Noun: Identity

The witness could not confirm the identity of the criminal in the police line-up; all of the suspects looked very similar.

Ignore

1. refuse to take notice of or acknowledge; disregard intentionally.
2. fail to consider (something significant).

“ignore” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+ignore+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Ignore someone / something

Be ignored by someone

I try to ignore people who speak during a movie screening, but I can't remain silent for too long – eventually I tell them to be quiet.

He did his best to ignore the pain in his side while he typed an email, because he knew he'd forget what he needed to write if he took a break.

She doesn't like the man who's speaking to her, so she's **simply** ignoring him.

Imagine

1. form a mental image or concept of.
2. suppose or assume.

"imagine" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+imagine+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Imagine something

I can imagine what it would be like to own a tropical island. It would be very relaxing to spend time there, and a privilege to be able to invite my friends there.

She didn't like working at a desk all day, so she often imagined being on an island, drinking a cocktail.

They lived in a dangerous neighbourhood, and imagined a future with more exciting and empowering opportunities.

Noun: Imagination

The child was able to tell amazing stories full of mystery and adventure because she had a very good imagination.

Impress

1. make (someone) feel admiration and respect.

"impress" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+impress+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Impress someone
Impressed by someone or something
Impressed with someone

I impress the elderly people in my community when I pick up litter and put it in a bin. I think they're easily impressed.

The student studied hard and impressed the teacher by producing a great result on the final exam.

The coach is going to be very impressed with his team's effort.

Noun: Impression

I think I made a bad first impression on my girlfriend's father, because he seemed very unimpressed with my bright orange suit.

Improve

1. make or become better.
2. develop or increase in mental capacity by education or experience.

"improve" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+improve+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Improve someone or something
Improve for someone or something

If I improve my dietary habits, I'll probably get a better night's sleep.

He played poorly last week, but this week he improved his performance significantly.

She'll train hard and her results will improve as a result.

Noun: Improvement

The team is playing a lot better in the second half of the season. Their improvement is due to a lot of hard work.

Include

1. comprise or contain as part of a whole.
2. make part of a whole or set.

“include” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+include+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Include someone or something

I include ‘listening to podcasts’ in my list of hobbies.

He made a creamy, chicken pasta – and although onions weren’t normally part of the recipe – on this occasion he included onions in the dish.

She’ll be a great cricketer. She’ll be included in the squad to compete at the World Cup.

Noun: Inclusion

The bully didn’t seem to understand or appreciate the concept of inclusion, because he continually refused to let other kids use the playground.

Increase

1. become or make greater in size, amount, or degree.

“increase” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+increase+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Increase something (by / with a value or size)

I drink a few beers on the weekend, and then watch my waistline increase in size the following week.

The book was becoming very popular, so the publisher increased the price.

She wanted bigger muscles, so she increased the weights on the machines at the gym.

They'll increase their speed in order to arrive on time.

Noun: Increase

The increase in sales could be attributed to the marketing team developing a more attractive advertising campaign.

Influence

1. have an influence on.

"influence" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+influence+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Influence someone or something

Sometimes I think I can influence others to change their mind, but it's difficult, because a lot of those people are addicted to social media and they're influenced more by the fake news they've been watching.

He saw his friend eating a piece of cake, which influenced his decision to order dessert. **Basically**, he was a little jealous.

The jury will probably be influenced by the testimony of the witness.

She never knew her father, but she was heavily influenced by her mother.

Noun: Influence

We should give credit to parents who do a good job raising their children, and we should not forget that teachers can also have a big influence on young people.

Inform

1. give (someone) facts or information; tell.
2. give an essential or formative principle or quality to.

“inform” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+inform+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Inform someone of something

“I have to inform you, I’m not who you think I am,” the undercover police officer told his friend, moments before arresting him.

He informed the police that a car accident had occurred on the highway.

Her parents will be shocked when she informs them she’s leaving university to become an actress.

Noun: Information

She was confident she could plan her trip well, because the information in her travel guidebook was comprehensive and up-to-date.

Inject

1. introduce (a liquid, especially a drug or vaccine) into the body with a syringe.
2. introduce (something) under pressure into a passage, cavity, or solid material.

“inject” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+inject+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Inject something into someone / something Inject someone with something

I wonder if some day in the future we’ll be able to inject mosquitos with a mind virus that stops them wanting to suck our blood.

He was injected with a vaccine to protect him against the virus.

She injected the needle into the patient.

Noun: Injection

You might need to get an injection to protect yourself from a disease if you're travelling overseas, depending on the country or region you wish to visit.

Injure

1. do physical harm or damage to (someone).
2. harm or impair (something).

"injure" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+injure+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Injure oneself / someone else

It's not a lot of fun playing sport when someone collides with you and injures your spine.

He rolled his ankle while playing football, and injured it quite badly.

She refuses to stretch her muscles before running, so I think she'll injure herself, eventually.

Noun: Injury

The motorcycle rider was lucky to survive the crash. He sustained injuries to his shoulder, ribs, and leg, and eventually made a full recovery.

Instruct

1. tell or order someone to do something, especially in a formal or official way.
2. teach (someone) a subject or skill.

“instruct” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+instruct+meaning> (01
October, 2021)

Instruct someone to do something

When I worked at the reception desk of a health clinic, I sometimes had to instruct people to use the clinic’s website to schedule an appointment.

The Colonel instructed the soldiers to run 10 laps of the obstacle course.

She bought a bed from IKEA, and the IKEA staff members instructed her not to lose the Allen key, because she wouldn’t be able to construct the bedframe without it.

Noun: Instruction

I’ve read the manual that came with the television, but I still can’t understand the instructions to set up the TV.

Intend

1. have (a course of action) as one's purpose or intention; plan.
2. design or destine something for a particular purpose.

“intend” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+intend+meaning> (01
October, 2021)

Intend to do / make something Intend for something to happen

I intend to walk for about 25 minutes at 6pm, because I like to build up an appetite right before dinner.

She intended to buy some fruit and vegetables, but realised it was unnecessary when her husband entered through the front door, carrying a bag of groceries.

He was going to drive to his grandparents place, but his brother had taken his car without his permission.

Noun: Intention

His aunt has no intention of giving him her money when she dies. Her money will go to her favourite charity instead.

Interest

1. excite the curiosity or attention of (someone).
2. persuade someone to undertake or acquire (something).

“interest” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+interest+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Interests (+ personal pronoun) Interested in something

I’m interested in biology, AI, economics, psychology, and politics.

He was interested in the girl next door, but he was too shy to ask her out on a date.

We think she’s going to be interested in different cultures after she returns from a trip around the world.

Noun: Interest

In the interest of safety, please keep your seatbelts securely fastened until the aircraft has come to a complete stop.

Interfere

1. intervene in a situation without invitation or necessity.
2. prevent (a process or activity) from continuing or being carried out properly.

“interfere” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+interfere+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Interfere with someone / something

I believe it's best not to interfere in the personal lives of other people.

The couple yelled at her, because she interfered in their private conversation.

"We'll stay inside our tent instead of flashing our torches into the trees. We don't want to interfere with the sleeping habits of any of the creatures," the Boy Scouts said. It was clear to their scout leader that they just wanted to stay inside their tent so they could play video games.

Noun: Interference

Several people could not connect to the internet, because bad weather was causing an interference to the signal.

Interrupt

1. stop the continuous progress of (an activity or process).
2. break the continuity of (a line or surface).

"interrupt" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+interrupt+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Interrupt someone / something

"Don't interrupt me again, or I'll send you straight to the Principal!" the teacher told his students.

He was travelling on a train when – as the carriage entered a tunnel – his phone conversation was momentarily interrupted.

She interrupted the professor's lecture to tell everyone they needed to evacuate the building.

He's trying to tell a funny story, but he's being interrupted by a barking dog.

Noun: Interruption

The grocery store worker often enjoyed dancing to the music playing in his store, so whenever another worker stopped the music to make an announcement, he was annoyed by the interruption.

Introduce

1. bring (something, especially a product, measure, or concept) into use or operation for the first time.
2. make (someone) known by name to another in person, especially formally.

“introduce” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+introduce+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Introduce someone / something

I don't like it when tv hosts take a long time to introduce their guests. I would prefer they get straight to the conversation or interview.

She briefly introduced the topic to the students, but promised them she would explain it more thoroughly at a later date, so they could have a better understanding.

He's going to introduce one of his single friends to another single friend.

Noun: Introduction

The introduction of an essay is at the beginning, and the conclusion is at the end.

Invent

1. create or design (something that has not existed before); be the originator of.
2. make up (an idea, name, story, etc.), especially so as to deceive someone.

“invent” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+invent+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Invent something

I wish I could invent something useful that would not only help the planet, but allow me to retire at an early age.

She invented a device that washes dishes. She'll called it 'a dishwasher.'

He knows his girlfriend will be angry at him for being late, so he's going to invent a story that he hopes will excuse his lateness.

Noun: Invention

The engineer created a robot that could eat plastic and tell bedtime stories. It was an interesting and unusual invention.

Invite

1. make a polite, formal, or friendly request to (someone) to go somewhere or to do something.

“invite” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+invite+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Invite someone

I invite friends to my house when there's a good football match on tv.

She invited over 100 guests to her wedding.

He's going to write a great article for a medical journal, and he'll be invited to talk about his research at a seminar.

Noun: Invitation

The couple **sent out** their wedding invitations. Theirs would be a small wedding, because only a few of their closest friends and family were

invited.

Irritate

1. make (someone) annoyed or a little angry.
2. cause inflammation or other discomfort in (a part of the body).

“irritate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+irritate+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Irritate someone

I am more than a little irritated by the lack of transparency in the mainstream media, and the amount of government corruption that exists worldwide.

She was irritated by her boyfriend's snoring.

He'll like camping, but no doubt he'll complain about how irritating it is to be sharing the campsite with mosquitoes.

Noun: Irritation

The rash on his wrist was usually very mild and unbothersome, but when it swelled and itched it caused a lot of irritation.

Itch

1. be the site of or cause an itch.

“itch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+itch+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Itch something

Be itched by something

I try not to scratch my skin when it itches, but it's not always easy.

She was bitten by mosquitoes, and as a result her skin itched.

The dog itched because it was constantly attacked by fleas.

Noun: Itch

I must have been bitten by something, because I have an annoying itch.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

simply ignoring him

'Simply', used before a verb in this way, can be useful in conveying to the listener that, earlier, they may have overemphasised the speaker's intention, and the overemphasis has caused them to misconstrue the true intent. It's often used when it's clear that someone has perceived some sort of ill-will, or attributed some negative intentionality, so the speaker may feel the need to correct the misunderstanding.

I'm not refusing to clean the dishes, I'm simply watching the end of my favourite tv show before I start doing the dishes.

There's no need to thank me, I'm simply returning the favour.

He thinks his explanation is excusing him of his behaviour, but he's simply digging a deeper hole. (Meaning, the effect he's having is the opposite of what he intends.)

I'm not doing her homework for her, I'm simply helping her with a few of the more difficult maths questions.

basically

Saying 'basically' allows one to expect the most important details the speaker wants to impart. It's a way to distil a message and retain all the appropriate relevance, while avoiding a drawn out explanation that's cumbersome and unnecessary.

"Why is the coverage from independent news so much more reliable and honest than mainstream news?"

"Well, that's just your opinion, but to the extent that it's true, there could be multiple reasons. Basically, I think some big companies commit crimes, but they don't get reported because those same companies supply the mainstream media with advertising revenue."

"I don't have time to watch this film. Can you summarize what happens for me?"

"Well, basically, the good guys win, and the guy and the girl get back together and live happily ever after."

We don't have a lot of money left and we need to stay open to make more of it. Basically, any more lockdowns or staff shortages will cause us to go out of business.

"I missed the meeting this morning. Can you tell me what the new management team said?"

"Well, they said many things, but basically they're not going to tolerate any laziness or workplace harassment."

The insurance company will come up with a lot of legal jargon and fancy terminology to help justify the increase in premiums, but basically, people will have to pay more because a lot of homeowners are now making insurance claims due to the recent natural disasters in the area.

sent out

To have something 'sent out' is really just to have it sent, but 'sent out' might be useful in some contexts where you want to convey a sense of immediacy with regard to the sending. It can conjure in one's mind a place from which an item is sent, and hence may be helpful to the sender as a means to state that it's *out* of their possession, *out* of the building and *out* of their control. Rest assured, if you forget to say 'out', 'sent' will be sufficient.

I've sent out a memo to all staff, informing them that I've also sent out an email to investors and shareholders declaring that we have no intention to merge with a rival company at this stage in time.

The teacher sent 3 kids out of the class for misbehaving while other students attempted to do an oral presentation.

Oh the 99th anniversary of their founding, the brewery sent out 99 bottles of beer with local trivia printed on the inside of the bottle caps of those bottles.

The rich couple thought there were trespassers in their yard, so they sent their angry guard dog outside to investigate.

J



Jail

1. put (someone) in jail.

“jail” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+jail+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Jail someone

I know a few people who have committed small crimes, but I don't know anyone who's been jailed for committing a crime.

He was jailed for 5 years for committing armed burglary.

They've been jailed, but I believe they have been falsely convicted; I think they are innocent.

Noun: Jail

She'll be sentenced to a minimum of 2 years in jail.

Jam

1. squeeze or pack tightly into a specified space.
2. become or make unable to move or work due to a part seizing up or becoming stuck.

“jam” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+jam+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Jam something into something

I jammed myself into the crowd that formed for the La Tomatina festival in Spain.

The crowd of people jammed into the town square and they couldn't get out – all of the exits had been blocked.

His toy is going to fall off his bed and get jammed between the bed and the wall.

Jog

1. run at a steady gentle pace, especially on a regular basis as a form of physical exercise.

“jog” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+jog+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Jog somewhere

Go for a jog

I usually jog for 20 minutes, 3 days per week.

He needed good running shoes in order to jog 5kms every morning.

She’s going to be **out of breath** if she jogs for 10 minutes.

Noun: Jog

I’m going to get up at 7am and go for a jog.

Join

1. link; connect.

“join” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+join+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Join someone

Join a group / club

Join forces with someone (idiom) (to form an alliance with someone in order to achieve something)

“Will you join us at the party,” the guy asked the girl.

He was dissatisfied with the government's actions to combat climate change, so he joined a group to protest the continued mistreatment of the environment.

She knew her company was failing, so she joined forces with a friend and graphic designer to form a new marketing company.

Joke

1. make jokes; talk humorously or flippantly.

"joke" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+joke+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Joke about something

Joke around (phrasal verb) (to intend to cause people to laugh and / or lighten the mood)

I think it's difficult for comedians to joke about sensitive issues, but some of them do it pretty well.

"Let's not joke about the current election campaign. We need to communicate these campaign messages to everyone we know," David told Karen.

"Haha," Karen laughed. After a short pause, she realised he was serious. "Oh, I thought you were joking."

The friends sat around the campfire telling stories and joking around. They also roasted marshmallows.

Noun: Joke

He made a joke about religion and a lot of people were offended. Presumably that particular religion played a central role in guiding the lives of those people.

Judge

1. form an opinion or conclusion about.

“judge” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+judge+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Judge someone / something

I try not to judge someone too harshly if I haven't known them very long, regardless of their behaviour.

She judged the skills and abilities of the contestants in the talent contest, and gave each of them a corresponding score.

He didn't like it when people judged him before taking some time to get to know him.

Noun: Judge

The judge made his decision and the ruling was final, so when he said, “Guilty,” the accused man started crying, knowing that he would spend the rest of his life in prison.

Juggle

1. continuously toss into the air and catch (a number of objects) so as to keep at least one in the air while handling the others.

“juggle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+juggle+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Juggle something / some things

I'm tired because three workers called in sick today, and I had to juggle more than my usual amount of tasks as a result.

She threw the tennis balls in the air and juggled them for three minutes straight.

He'll juggle the balls, then hold out a hat. He receives coin donations from the small crowds that gather to watch his performance.

Jump

1. push oneself off a surface and into the air by using the muscles in one's legs and feet.
2. (of a person) move suddenly and quickly in a specified way.

"jump" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+jump+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Jump

Jump something

Jump into /over / through something

I jumped over the puddle of water to avoid wetting my new shoes.

She commanded her dog to jump through the hoops during the dog show.

He'll jump into the river and swim to the other side.

Noun: Jump

She was nervous, but managed to concentrate on her breathing, then execute a perfect jump to win the gold medal!

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

out of breath

'Out of breath' certainly doesn't mean that one is completely and terminally lacking oxygen – we simply use the phrase to mean that one lacks it to the point of being uncomfortable, and requires more air one's lungs in order to experience the closely related 'catching' of one's breath. Both are commonly used in the context of over-exerting oneself in the process of exercising.

I'm out of breath every time I walk to the end of the street. That's not a good sign. I'm definitely going to have to go on a diet and get in shape.

My friend's dogs are always out of breath when I see them, because the only time I see them are when they've chased my car down the long and dusty driveway leading to my friend's house.

I notice I'm out of breath after doing a small amount of exercise on hot days in which I'm also dehydrated and lacking sleep.

I tried to sprint to the top of the hill, but I had to stop half way to catch my breath.

K



Kick

1. strike or propel forcibly with the foot.

“kick” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+kick+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Kick something / someone

I can kick a football 40 metres.

He kicked the ball and scored a goal.

She'll compete in the karate competition, and she'll need to kick with **skill and precision** in order to win.

Noun: Kick

The kick to the side of his abdomen caused 2 broken ribs.

Kill

1. cause the death of (a person, animal, or other living thing).
2. put an end to or cause the failure or defeat of (something).

“kill” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+kill+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Kill something / someone

I've caused a couple of road accidents, but I've never killed anyone.

He killed the mouse by placing some cheese on a trap, which the mouse tried to take. He felt guilty afterwards, but also knew he couldn't let his home be overrun with mice.

She'll go hunting and try to kill some rabbits with a rifle.

Noun: Kill

The lion crept through the long grass and kept its gaze on the gazelle, then quickly moved in for the kill.

Kiss

1. touch or caress with the lips as a sign of love, sexual desire, or greeting.

“kiss” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+kiss+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Kiss someone / something

I hope I never have to kiss a toad to find the love of my life.

The loving couple passionately kissed, and they didn't care who was watching.

The married couple discussed ways to celebrate their anniversary. “We’ll meet under the oak tree and kiss like we did the day we met!” the wife suggested.

Noun: Kiss

She leaned toward her boyfriend and gave him a kiss.

Kneel

1. be in or assume a position in which the body is supported by a knee or the knees, as when praying or showing submission.

“kneel” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+kneel+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Kneel

Kneel down (phrasal verb) (to kneel)

I see the church parishioners kneeling and praying inside the church every Sunday morning.

The unfaithful man knelt down and begged his girlfriend for forgiveness. (The American spelling is a regular verb. The British spelling of kneel in the past tense is 'knelt.')

The plumber is going to have to kneel if he wants to be low enough to work on the pipes.

Knit

1. make (a garment, blanket, etc.) by interlocking loops of wool or other yarn with knitting needles or on a machine.
2. unite or cause to unite.

"knit" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+knit+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Knit something

I think knitting is an underused and underappreciated skill.

The woman knitted a cardigan for her granddaughter.

She'll take the knitting needles and ball of yarn, and knit a small sweater for her newborn baby.

Knock

1. strike a surface noisily to attract attention, especially when waiting to be let in through a door.
2. collide with (someone or something), giving them a hard blow.

"knock" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+knock+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Knock something / someone

Knock something / someone down (phrasal verb) (to cause someone to fall)

Knock someone out (phrasal verb) (to concuss someone)

Knock something back (phrasal verb) (to reject an offer)

Knock something off (phrasal verb) (to steal something)

I knocked someone's shoulder while walking on a busy city street, and quickly turned to apologise.

He stumbled and knocked the vase, causing it to wobble and almost fall from the mantle.

She played football and knocked herself out when her head hit the goalpost.

"Thanks for your offer of \$150 for the mower, but I'm going to have to knock it back; I'm hoping to sell it for at least twice that amount."

"I don't know why all these television sets are so cheap," one friend asked another.

"They've probably been knocked off," his friend replied.

Noun: Knock

The boxer ducked and weaved around his opponent, but then stumbled as his opponent threw a punch, and the subsequent knock to the head caused him to lose consciousness.

Knot

1. fasten with a knot.
2. make (something, especially hair) tangled.

"knot" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+knot+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Knotted something

I have been able to knot my shoelaces since I was 4 years old.

She noticed her shoelaces were untied, so she tied them and knotted them to keep them from coming loose.

We'll knot the rope several times, and it will form a ball, which we can give to the cat to play with.

Noun: Knot

He threaded the cotton through the needle then made a knot so the cotton would not slide out.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

skill and precision

I've included 'skill and precision' to draw attention to the fact that we often choose two (usually closely related) nouns when one doesn't seem quite enough to convey the point, and/or adding the second word sounds nice to the reader or listener. Here are a few combinations you might see together:

*Despite living in a rapidly changing, unstable world, I still know a lot of young people who maintain **hope and optimism** for the future.*

*A lot of **respect and admiration** is felt for the early immigrants who came with nothing, and helped to create **rich and vibrant** communities.*

*I like drinking beer and eating **sweet and sour** chicken.*

*There was a lot of **push and pull** between the two rival parties, until they eventually reached a compromise.*

*She's a **kind and patient** girl who always keeps her room **neat and tidy**.*

coming loose

Even though 'becoming' may seem like a more reasonable option, in normal speech we're likely to use 'coming' to refer to a moving process.

My tooth is coming loose. Should I push it out with my tongue, pull it out with a string, or wait for it to fall out naturally?

The stitching is coming loose on my jeans. I should probably fix it soon, otherwise my jeans will fall apart completely.

I think the rear wheel of your car is starting to come loose, because I noticed it wobbling when you entered the carpark.

Her shoelaces are coming loose as she runs. She risks tripping over if she doesn't tie them up soon.

We can understand that one person or thing has moved or is in the process of moving from one place to another, but it's worth pointing out that it can be literal, metaphorical, or figurative – I.e.:

He is coming around the corner. = He's currently moving around the corner.

He is coming to his senses. = He's gradually realising the sensible option / position.

He is coming to. = He's progressively regaining more conscious awareness.

She came out. = (literally) She exited a physical location. (figurative) She revealed her sexual preference.

It can also mean that someone intends to move from one place to another.

We most commonly use 'will' or 'going to' as the preferred options for jumping into the future tense, but it's also possible with 'coming' in the context of a declaration of someone's intent to be somewhere (typically a scheduled event), or that they're currently on their way there.

They are coming to the party.

He's coming to the rally.

We're coming to the meeting, we'll just be a little late.

She's coming on the 14th of July.

L



Label

1. attach a label to (something).
2. assign to a category, especially inaccurately or restrictively.

“label” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+label+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Label something / someone

I labelled the bowl of soup so people would know what was in it.

He knew he would forget which documents were which, so he labelled them.

She'll label her collection of vinyl records according to genre, then place them in order from oldest to newest.

Noun: Label

The label on the milk carton provided information on the nutritional content of the product.

Land

1. come down through the air and rest on the ground or another surface.

“land” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+land+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Land something (that's airborne)

Land on something

I find it difficult to land on my feet if I jump off something more than 2 metres high.

They lowered the spacecraft and landed it on the moon.

The plane was due to take-off at 2pm and land at 4pm, but it landed at 4.15pm.

Noun: Land

Few people live in the middle of Australia because the land is so dry.

Last

1. (of a process, activity, or state) continue for a specified period of time.
2. continue to operate or remain usable for a considerable or specified length of time.

"last" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+last+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

To last

"I think the batteries are almost flat. It can't last much longer," the woman told her housemate, referring to the failing remote control.

He competed in the marathon and expected to finish it, but he only lasted 25 minutes before retiring with a sore calf muscle.

She won't be having a long, hot shower for long, because the hot water lasts only 30 seconds.

Laugh

1. make the spontaneous sounds and movements of the face and body that are the instinctive expressions of lively amusement and sometimes also of derision.

"laugh" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+laugh+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Laugh at something / someone
Laugh with someone

I saw a movie about two friends who travel across the country to deliver a briefcase to a beautiful woman. It was funny – I think I laughed about 50 times.

He laughed at the comedian's raunchy joke.

She'll **catch up** with some old friends. They'll meet at the hotel lobby to drink, laugh, and share stories.

Noun: Laugh

He decided to see her for a second date. He didn't agree with her politics and her values, but she was gorgeous, and he loved her laugh.

Launch

1. set (a boat) in motion by pushing it or allowing it to roll into the water.
2. start or set in motion (an activity or enterprise).

"launch" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+launch+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Launch into / at something or someone
Launch a / an / the + noun

I launched a verbal tirade at the schoolkids who scratched the side of my car.

The soldiers launched a rocket at their enemy.

She'll launch an investigation into the man accused of making unwanted sexual advances toward female staff.

Noun: Launch

The launch of the rocket was due to take place in an open field in springtime.

Learn

1. gain or acquire knowledge of or skill in (something) by study, experience, or being taught.

“learn” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+learn+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Learn something

Learn about something

I’m trying to learn Spanish and Korean, but it’s difficult learning two languages at the same time.

He didn't know how to swim three years ago, but he took several lessons and eventually learned how to do it.

She learned to be polite to others, with the help of her parents.

Level

1. give a flat and even surface to.

“level” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+level+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Level something

I don’t think I’ve had to level any wood recently. The last time I levelled something was probably when I made a computer desk in 1999.

He levelled the ground in order to allow the building crew to build a house on a flat, even surface.

He is going to level the wobbly table by placing some cardboard under the short leg of the table.

Noun: Level

The water level rose **considerably** the following day, and all residents were asked to leave their homes to protect themselves.

Lick

1. pass the tongue over (something) in order to taste, moisten, or clean it.

"lick" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+lick+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Lick something / someone

I feed my dog at 6pm every night. He scoffs his dinner then licks the bowl.

He licked the ice cream to prevent it from dripping down the cone.

She ate the chicken wings with her hands and then licked the sauce off her fingers.

Lie

1. to make an untrue statement with intent to deceive
2. to create a false or misleading impression

"lie" Merriam Webster. (Entry 3 of 6)

<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/lie> (01 October, 2021)

Lie about something

Lie to someone

I try not to lie, but I wasn't so respectful of the truth when I was younger.

He lied to his mother because he didn't want to get in trouble; he knew she'd be angry if she discovered the truth – that he was absent from school.

She was only 17 years old, but she lied about her age to gain admission into a nightclub.

Noun: Lie

The old woman wanted to defend her delinquent grandson, but when police asked her where he'd been, she told the truth. When her grandson asked her why she didn't protect him, she said "I did protect you. You need to take responsibility for your actions. Besides," she added, "I can't tell a lie."

Lighten

1. make or become lighter in weight, pressure, or severity.
2. make or become more cheerful or less serious.

"lighten" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+lighten+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Lighten something

If I notice my friends are feeling some tension in each other's presence, I try to tell a joke to lighten the mood.

She lightened the weight of the exercise machine in order to ease the strain on her muscles.

He'll open the curtains to lighten the room.

Like

1. find agreeable, enjoyable, or satisfactory.
2. wish for; want.

“like” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+like+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Like something / someone

I like drinking a beer while watching football.

She really liked him, so she decided to ask him out on a date.

“If you like exercising where there’s nice scenery, you’ll like jogging along the beach in the morning,” the host told the guests. “The sunrise is magnificent.”

List

1. make a list of.

“list” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+list+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

List something

I can’t list the amount of times I’ve heard people get excited about space travel – there’s been too many.

She listed the items she needed from the supermarket and stuck the list on the fridge.

The next location he’s planning to visit has been listed as an exposure site on the government website.

Noun: List

The young men weren’t able to access the private party, because their names were not on the guest list.

Listen

1. give one's attention to a sound.

"listen" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+listen+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Listen to something / someone

Listen in (phrasal verb) (listen intently, take care not to miss any details)

I try to listen to everyone's opinion, but it's difficult when their views seem illogical and are based on emotion, rather than facts.

She listened to her favourite band on her iPod, from morning till night.

The students will have to listen to their professor if they want to pass the course.

Live

1. remain alive.
2. make one's home in a particular place or with a particular person.

"live" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+live+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Live somewhere / in something

Live with someone

I love to travel and live in other countries, so I'm eager to learn when international travel will resume.

He lived in Mexico for three years, and then moved to Los Angeles.

She'll do a big road trip and live in a caravan for three months.

Load

1. fill (a vehicle, ship, container, etc.) with a large amount of something.
2. make (someone or something) carry or hold a large or excessive quantity of heavy things.

“load” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+load+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Load something

Load something onto something

I hurt my back trying to load heavy furniture into a moving van.

The farmers loaded the potatoes into the back of the truck.

The workers are going to load the pallet with the necessary products, and then ask the forklift driver to take it away.

Noun: Load

The truck with the heavy load struggled to reach the top of the hill.

Lock

1. fasten or secure (something) with a lock.
2. restrict access to the full functionality or data of (a computer, mobile phone, file, etc.), especially by requiring a user to verify their identity with a passcode or other form of authentication.

“lock” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+lock+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Lock something

Locked in / out of some place / thing (phrasal verb) (to not be able to get in or out of some place due to some lock or trap)

Locked up (phrasal verb) (to be sent to prison)

I think the sheep got out of the paddock because someone forgot to lock the gate.

She felt there was an intruder lurking around the house, so she locked her doors and called the police.

He's locked himself out of his car.

The couple read the small print of the contract and decided not to sign it. The contract stipulated that they'd be locked into the deal for 5 years longer than they originally thought.

Noun: Lock

I couldn't leave my bag in the locker because I didn't have a lock to keep my bag safely secured.

Long

1. have a strong wish or desire.

"long" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+long+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Long for something / someone

I long for the days when we could buy a piece of fish for \$4. Now we pay more like \$7.

She was tired of the cold winter days and longed for warm summer nights.

He will long for his girlfriend when she's in Asia for a business retreat.

Look

1. direct one's gaze toward someone or something or in a specified direction.
2. think of or regard in a specified way.

“look” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+lock+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Look after someone / something

Look at someone / something

Look through / into something

Look through something (phrasal verb) (to be able to see, recognise, or comprehend something that is otherwise concealed, usually purposefully concealed)

Look into something (phrasal verb) (inquire into something)

I think some people underestimate the commitment that’s required to look after a pet.

“Stop looking at me!” the toddler screamed at his mother.

“Can you look through my trash and tell me if you find an old GoPro?” the man phoned his neighbour to ask, while on holiday. “My wife threw it out before we left. She thought it was broken, but it isn’t.”

She didn't know where the sound was coming from, but it was keeping her awake, so she decided to look into it.

Noun: Look

He said he was not angry anymore, but the look he gave suggested otherwise.

Love

1. feel deep affection for (someone).
2. like or enjoy very much.

“love” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+love+meaning> (01 October, 2021)

Love someone / something

I love skipping breakfast then eating pancakes or waffles with maple syrup and ice cream for lunch.

They loved taking vacations.

He loved the way she moved her body when she danced to her favourite song.

Noun: Love

Her love for him, and her desire to stay with him, was the reason she decided to reject a job in another city.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

catch up with

To 'catch up with someone' is to meet with them, with the noun form known as a 'catch up.' It refers to a meeting with someone we've previously met, and is casual in nature. It isn't really seen as something where serious matters are discussed. Not to be confused with 'catch up to,' which would be used to imply that someone needs to increase their intensity, speed or effort in order to reach an expected standard. I.e. "You need to catch up to the other hikers, you're too far behind."

I always enjoy catching up with friends and having a good chat.

*Are you free for a catch up this Thursday.
No, I'm busy this Thursday unfortunately.*

I caught up with Jake on the weekend, and he said you were feeling a little sick. Are you doing ok now?

I'm catching up with Tim at Pony Fish Island at 1 o'clock. You should come. I'm sure he'd like to catch up with you too.

considerably

We can use 'considerably' to mean a significant amount of difference when making comparisons, thus the word that follows will have the comparative 'er' ending to show that someone, for example, is not just a little happier than someone else, but they are 'considerably' happier (a lot happier). It can also come after a clause to communicate a specific, substantial change. I.e. "He's considerably taller than he was last year. He's grown so much."

I think there must be advantages to living a minimalist lifestyle. My friend started living in accordance with that lifestyle, and he's considerably happier as a result.

It's considerably warmer here in January than it is in July, because it's summer here in January.

I know we have a lot of information and technology at our fingertips, but a lot of people think we've become considerably dumber since the advent of the internet.

It seems counterintuitive to skip breakfast, but since skipping breakfast I feel considerably healthier.

more like

When we say 'more like' we're not signalling that there's a stronger preference for the description that follows. Put another way, we're not saying we like something more than something else, rather, we're suggesting that the description that follows refers to a more accurate similarity than the one stated in the preceding clause.

We booked an SUV through the car rental agency, but what they gave us looked more like a minivan.

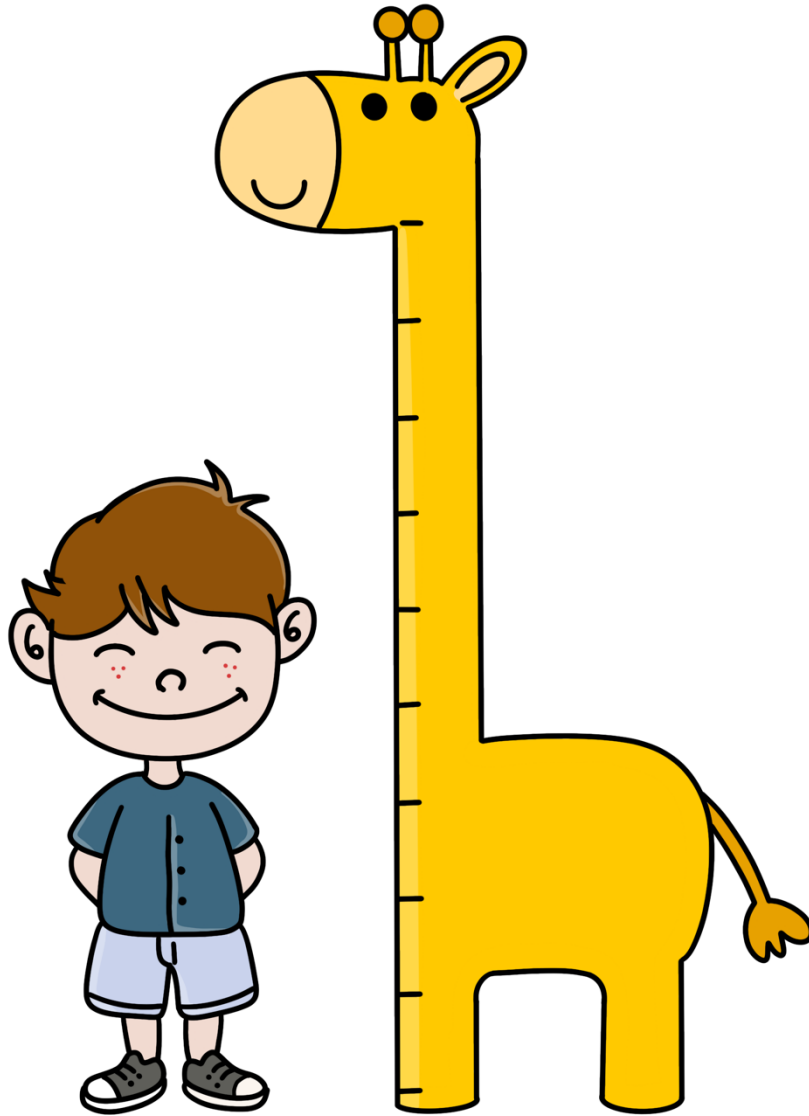
I ordered a shiraz, but I think it tastes more like a pinot noir.

"Do you think I can buy that house for \$100,000."

"No, not a chance. That house looks more like half a million dollars. Real estate is all about location, and that house has a view overlooking the ocean."

My mum's got a dog, but he acts more like a cat – always licking his hair and chasing after birds.

M



Manage

1. be in charge of (a business, organization, or undertaking); run.
2. succeed in surviving or in achieving something despite difficult circumstances; cope.

“manage” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+manage+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Manage someone or some group

Manage something (like a project or situation)

I manage a football team.

He managed the supermarket before becoming a manager of a department store.

She'll find it difficult to complete the exam, but she'll manage to complete it eventually.

Noun: Manager

The manager knew it was her responsibility to make the final decision on the hiring and firing of employees.

March

1. walk in a military manner with a regular measured tread.

“march” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+march+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

March with someone / some group

March toward some place

March for some person / people / event

I march to **the beat of my own drum**.

He marched down the street, hitting his drum while participating in the marching band.

The soldiers will march for 2 straight hours.

Noun: March

The march proceeded from one street to the next. Most people from the town watched from the sidelines, cheering and waving as the band marched on.

Mark

1. make a visible impression or stain on.
2. write a word or symbol on (an object) in order to give information.

"mark" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mark+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Mark something

I have a lot of assignments to mark later today.

He marked the date on the calendar so he wouldn't forget.

She'll receive her students' exams and mark them 'Pass' or 'Fail.'

Noun: Mark

I never got good marks in mathematics, because I couldn't understand the theories and formulas that were required to make the calculations.

Marry

1. join in marriage.
2. join together; combine harmoniously.

“marry” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+marry+meaning> (02
October, 2021)

Marry someone

I’m not sure if I want to marry her.

He married his long term girlfriend, and then they went on their honeymoon together.

“They’ll be married for four years,” one sceptical onlooker pronounced, at the newly married couple’s wedding.

Match

1. correspond or cause to correspond in some essential respect; make or be harmonious.
2. be equal to (something) in quality or strength.

“match” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+match+meaning> (02
October, 2021)

Match someone / something (with / to) someone or something

Match together

Match according to

I have matched with women on online dating sites, but it doesn’t always lead to a conversation.

The contestants were matched according to their ability level.

She’ll see that the white shoes match her white dress.

Noun: Match

The couple disagreed on some minor issues, but they were a good match because they shared similar values, had a sense of humour, and were physically attracted to each other.

Mate

1. (of animals or birds) come together for breeding; copulate.

“mate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mate+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

To mate

I think we’re more likely to refer to animals mating than we are to refer to humans mating. We’re more likely say that humans find a partner and decide to start a family.

The cats mated and the female had a small litter.

The zookeepers don’t think the pandas are going to be mating anytime soon.

Noun: Mate

The female cared for her mate when he was sick, and he cared for her when she was sick.

Matter

1. be important or significant.

“matter” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+matter+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

To have someone / something matter to someone

The result matters to me because I support one of the teams.

She didn't like soccer, so the result of the final match didn't matter to her.

“We’ll probably regret not showing our loved ones how much they matter to us,” one man said to his cousin.

Measure

1. ascertain the size, amount, or degree of (something) by using an instrument or device marked in standard units.
2. assess the importance, effect, or value of (something).

“measure” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+measure+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Measure something / someone

I don't need to read fractions or numbers written on measuring cups – I have a good intuition when it comes to measuring the right amount of pasta for dinnertime.

He measured the sugar in a cup and then measured the flour in a cup, then put both ingredients into the mixture.

She'll have to measure her waist to see if she'll fit into the wedding dress.

Noun: Measurement

The tailor took his tape and wrapped it around his customer's chest, waist and hips, in order to get the correct measurements before making the customer's suit.

Meddle

1. interfere in something that is not one's concern.
2. touch or handle (something) without permission.

“meddle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+meddle+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Meddle in / into someone's life (specifically, the aspects of their life they'd prefer to keep private)

I try not to meddle in other peoples' private lives.

She meddled into her friend's private affairs with good intentions, but her friend did not appreciate the intrusiveness.

"He's going to meddle into Brian's problems without consent, so Brian will probably be very upset," one friend told another, referring to their meddling friend.

Melt

1. make or become liquefied by heat.
2. make or become more tender or loving.

"melt" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+melt+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Melt something

I think it's best to eat ice-cream in the summertime, but sometimes the hot weather means having to eat it quickly, because the ice cream melts so fast.

The ice was taken out of the freezer and it eventually melted.

The foundry melted the metal and poured the resultant liquid into a cast.

Memorise

1. commit to memory; learn by heart.

"memorise" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+memorise+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Memorise something

I find it difficult to memorise monologues and stories with complicated plots.

The man memorised the order of the cards in the deck.

She'll need to see which numbers are on her credit card, then study the order carefully if she wants to memorise the numbers for quick and easy online purchases.

Noun: Memory

Her memory of the event was a little foggy, because it had been such a long time since the event had happened, and many similar memories clouded her recollection.

Mend

1. repair (something that is broken or damaged).

"mend" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mend+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Mend something

I mended my torn shirt by stitching it with a needle and thread.

The soles of her shoes were falling apart, but he mended them before the start of the marathon.

The carpenter mended the table, **such that it** no longer wobbled.

Mess

1. make untidy or dirty.

"mess" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mess+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

To mess (transitive verb) Most commonly used with 'up', as in:
Mess something up (phrasal verb) (to make something or some place messy)

I don't often need to clean my room, because I'm careful not to mess it up.

He didn't know exactly what he'd done, but he could tell from his boss's frustrated expression that he'd messed up.

She's going to mess up her speech and embarrass herself if she doesn't take a breath soon.

Noun: Mess

The child threw her clothes and her toys all over her room, and it made a huge mess.

Milk

1. draw milk from (a cow or other animal), either by hand or mechanically.

"milk" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+milk+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Milk an animal

I have never milked a cow.

The farmer milked the cows.

She's a farmhand. She'll help deliver a baby cow, known as a calf, and then feed some of the cows.

Noun: Milk

The milk was pumped out of the cows and into bottles, which were then transported to stores to be sold to the public.

Mine

1. dig or burrow in (the earth).
2. exploit (a source of information or skill).

"mine" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mine+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Mine something

I don't think we should be mining the ground for resources, we should be mining our own consciousness in order to explore the depths and the mysteries of life.

She worked for a company that mined the earth in search of precious minerals.

The mining company will mine in that area until all the natural resources have been exhausted.

Noun: Mine

The mine was the workplace of many local residents in the past, but now the mine is no longer in operation and the townsfolk have no jobs.

Miss

1. fail to hit, reach, or come into contact with (something aimed at).
2. fail to notice, hear, or understand.

"miss" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+miss+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

3. to not include someone or something

“miss someone / something out” Cambridge Dictionary.
<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/essential-british-english/miss-someone-something-out> (02 October, 2021)

4. If you miss something, you feel sad because you no longer have it or are no longer doing or experiencing it.

“miss someone” Collins Dictionary. (Entry #7)
<https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/miss> (02 October, 2021)

Miss something / someone

I miss going to the football stadium and hearing the roar of the crowd. I haven't been able to **get to** a match for several years.

They had been separated for more than one year, and he still missed her a lot.

She's going to be late to her interview because she missed the bus.

Mix

1. combine or put together to form one substance or mass.
2. (of a person) associate with others socially.

“mix” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mix+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Mix something with some other thing or things Mixed emotions (idiom)

I don't think soup tastes very good if you mix too much salt in with the broth.

They thought they'd be harder to spot if they mixed in with the crowd.

She has mixed emotions about going to the party because she hates one of the guys attending, but also wants to drink and have fun with her friends.

Noun: Mixture

The baker mixed the sugar and the flour then added an egg to the mixture.

Moan

1. make a long, low sound expressing physical or mental suffering or sexual pleasure.
2. complain or grumble, typically about something trivial.

“moan” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+moan+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Moan (usually in pain or delight)

I think hearing people moan in pain can be traumatising, but in saying that, I don't in any way mean to undermine the obvious suffering endured by the injured victim.

He badly injured his leg and fell to the ground. He stayed there and moaned in pain until the paramedics arrived.

“If I know myself like I think I do, she'll be moaning with delight tonight!” the overconfident man told his friends.

Noun: Moan

He let out a loud moan when hearing of the death of a loved one.

Moor

1. make fast (a boat) by attaching it by cable or rope to the shore or to an anchor.

“moor” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+moor+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Moor something to something

I haven't had the experience of mooring a boat to a pier.

The boats in the harbour were moored near the pier so they would not drift away.

She'll need to moor the boat close to the loading dock in order for the shipping containers to be safely removed.

Mourn

1. feel or show sorrow for the death of (someone), typically by following conventions such as the wearing of black clothes.
2. feel regret or sadness about (the loss or disappearance of something).

"mourn" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mourn+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Mourn the loss of someone / something

I haven't had to mourn anyone close to me recently, but I hope that when I do I can remind myself that it's a necessary a part of life.

He mourned the death of his wife.

The brother and sister were in mourning because their favourite uncle had just passed away.

Move

1. go in a specified direction or manner; change position.
2. make progress; develop in a particular manner or direction.

“move” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+move+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Move something / someone

I worked as a mover once – I lasted 1 day. I quit, not because it was difficult to move the heavy furniture, but because one of the senior employees had a psychotic episode that made me feel unsafe, and he was allowed to continue working for the company in the same role.

She didn't like the couch being close to the television, so she moved it further away.

He doesn't like where he's living, so he's going to quit his job and move to a nicer town.

Noun: Move

The removalists arrived and packed the truck with furniture, helping the couple with their move.

Muddle

1. bring into a disordered or confusing state.

“muddle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+muddle+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Muddle something

I muddle my brain when I try to do too many things at the same time.

She muddled up puzzle pieces then attempted to put the puzzle together.

His ability to make sense of a given situation is decreasing because his mind muddles as he ages.

Noun: Muddled

He couldn't remember where he'd met her because his mind was muddled.

Mugg

1. attack and rob (someone) in a public place.

“mugg” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+mugg+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Mug someone

Be mugged by someone

She travelled through the United States and was mugged by someone. The criminal stole her purse when she walked down a narrow street at night.

He desperately needed money, so he mugged an old lady who had just taken money out of a cash machine.

“We’re not going to mug someone just because we need money. We have more integrity than that!” the group leader said, after one of his followers suggested the idea.

Multiply

1. obtain from (a number) another which contains the first number a specified number of times.
2. increase or cause to increase greatly in number or quantity.

“multiply” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+multiply+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Multiply something

I was never very good at mathematics in school, **apart from** being able to multiply single digit numbers.

The student multiplied 5 apples with 5 apples and arrived at the sum of 25 apples.

The virus is multiplying at a very fast rate.

Noun: Multiplication

She asked her mathematics professor if her multiplication contained the correct numbers.

Murder

1. kill (someone) unlawfully and with premeditation.

“murder” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+murder+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Murder (a living creature)

I wonder how many people would murder if it was legal.

The drug addict was murdered by the drug dealer because the addict didn't repay his debt.

She'll be sentenced to 15 years in prison for murdering her husband.

Noun: Murder

Residents left the community in droves due to several recent murders in the neighbourhood.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

beat of my own drum

To move or behave in a way that is to 'the beat of one's own drum' is to behave in a way that is unique to that person, and tends to do and say things according to their own whims and principles (however bizarre they may seem) consistently. Their individuality is, for this reason, often admirable and / or charismatic. One who walks to the 'beat of his own drum,' is unaffected by the thoughts and opinions of others. The saying is usually meant in a positive way:

She's got great principles. She'll listen to other people's advice, but she always follows her heart and trusts her intuition. She walks to the beat of her own drum.

He's an inspiring pioneer who always wanted to tread his own path. He's an independent thinker with a unique mind, and he won't let popular opinion affect his judgement. In other words, he marches to the beat of his own drum.

He's not bothered when other kids exclude him from games. He does his own thing, walking to the beat of his own drum.

She's not afraid to get into trouble, and is prepared to do things her own way. She walks to the beat of her own drum.

such that it

'Such that it' is like saying 'in such a way that it (+ behaves in this way)' which allows the reader or listener to infer that they should interpret the preceding part of the sentence to be what allows for the possibility or inevitability of the second part of the sentence.

The book addresses important issues while still managing to be concise and entertaining, such that it provides a lot of useful information, and can be read from start to finish in a single day.

The hailstones from the storm were quite big yesterday, such that they cracked several car windscreens.

I was so relaxed and comfortable at that time, such that I drifted off to sleep.

Some people hate cleaning so much, such that they prefer to hire a cleaner rather than do it themselves.

get to (a place)

To 'get to a place' is to arrive at a place, but it can also be used to convey some sense of urgency. "We've got to get to the hospital, my wife is about to give birth!" In informal speech we tend not to say that we need to arrive somewhere, but it's quite common to hear that we need to 'get some place.' So, 'get' is also imbued with this sense of making sure the movement from one place to another takes place.

We have to get to the hospital. My wife is about to have a baby!

If I manage to get to the city before 5pm, I'll do some Christmas shopping.

I wanted to eat Chinese food, but I couldn't get to the Chinese restaurant before it closed.

I might collect some shells if I can get to the beach before the tide comes in.

apart from

'Apart from' tells us there are details of a situation, condition, event etc. that can be excepted in this particular case for one reason or another. It's a way to let people know that almost everything has been included, except for a few that can be set aside, or 'apart from' the aforementioned inclusions.

I'm pretty content at the moment. I don't have any problems in my life, apart from a constant ringing sound in my right ear. The condition is called tinnitus.

Apart from some light turbulence that's predicted in the first 15 minutes, conditions for the vast majority of the flight seem perfect for flying.

All of the kids left the party happy, apart from one child who stubbed his toe and threw candy into the goldfish pond.

All of the scientists agreed that global warming is (at least partially) caused by humans, apart from one scientist who insists the changes are

consistent with natural cycles, and that humans have had no effect on the warming of the planet.

N



Nail

fasten with a nail or nails.

1. detect or catch (someone, especially a suspected criminal).

“nail” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+nail+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Nail something

Nail something (phrasal verb) (to execute a task well)

To nail someone (phrasal verb) (to catch a criminal, or catch someone in the act of committing a crime or breaking a rule)

I don't usually have any problems doing woodworking projects. I'm particularly good at nailing pieces of wood together.

She took a hammer and nailed the nail into the wood.

I thought the comedian wouldn't be able to tell the joke, but he nailed it!

“We'll nail him when he **least suspects** it,” the policeman told his colleague.

Noun: Nail

I misplaced my hand while building something and a nail went into my finger. It was the end of my career in construction.

Name

1. give a name to.
2. specify (a sum, time, or place) as something desired, suggested, or decided on.

“name” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+name+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Name something / someone

Name a price (phrasal verb) (to suggest a price for consideration of a sale)

I named by first pet dog Ellie.

The parents named their newborn baby Chloe.

The manager named 5 employees who had to attend the business function.

"They've priced this shirt well above what it's worth," the disappointed shopper said.

Noun: Name

When we meet people for the first time we usually shake their hand and tell them our name.

Need

1. require (something) because it is essential or very important rather than just desirable.
2. expressing necessity or obligation.

"need" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+need+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Need something / someone

I don't want to listen to him, but he says he needs to talk to me about something important.

The rescue team needed to find the missing person very quickly.

She'll need to work late tonight, which means she'll need her husband to pick up their kids from school.

Nod

1. lower and raise one's head slightly and briefly, especially in greeting, assent, or understanding, or to give someone a signal.
2. let one's head fall forward when drowsy or asleep.

“nod” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+nod+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

To nod

I usually nod at the people walking around my town when we walk past each other on the footpath.

The student asked the teacher if he could go to the bathroom, and the teacher nodded.

She nodded in agreement.

Noun: Nod

We went to a conference last week and the organiser told us: “It isn’t necessary to clap or cheer to let the guest speaker know you understand – a simple nod of the head will suffice.”

Note

1. notice or pay particular attention to (something).
2. record (something) in writing.

“note” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+note+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Note something down

Noted for doing something / being someone

I wish I’d noted down more key facts and figures in my history class – I probably would’ve got better results in exams.

He was noted for being a very good athlete.

She'll look for a good area to raise her family and note which neighbourhoods have the best schools.

Noun: Note

The note that the girl had written to her boyfriend was intercepted by his mother, so he never discovered that she still had feelings for him.

Notice

1. become aware of.

"notice" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+notice+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Notice something / someone

I notice that the mainstream news tries to sensationalise stories in order to improve television ratings.

He entered his home cautiously because he noticed the front door – which was usually closed – was slightly ajar.

She noticed her husband and his father had a lot of similar mannerisms.

Noun: Notice

The tenant found a notice on his front door. It said he had to leave the premises within 2 weeks due to his inability to keep **up-to-date** with rent payments.

Number

1. amount to (a specified figure or quantity); comprise.
2. mark with a number or assign a number to, typically to indicate position in a series.

“number” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+number+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Number something / some people

I numbered the complaints in my letter from most infuriating to least infuriating.

The contestants were numbered from 1 to 10, and eventually number 7 was the winner.

The raffle tickets were numbered from 1 to 100, and separated into two colour-coded groups: red and blue.

Noun: Number(s)

There's a large number of fish in the river this year.

The event attracted huge numbers this year.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

least suspects

To suspect something, including any real or abstract details, is to feel that you have sufficient evidence or intuition to merit having confidence in its existence. Therefore, to 'least suspect' someone is guilty of a crime, is to believe they are the least likely person to have committed that crime. It can be used for present/past situations, while the closely related 'least expect' is used for the future.

"Who do you suspect knocked the motorcycle over?"

"I don't know, but the sweet old lady with the walking-stick is the person I least suspect. She looks too kind and too weak to be the vandal."

"I suspect the start time of the show has been delayed due to a bomb threat."

"I least suspect a bomb threat is the reason the show is delayed. The staff would've asked us to calmly evacuate the building if that were the case. It's more likely one of the performers is just late getting to the theatre."

"Who do you least expect to contribute at the meeting?"

"Probably John. He's never got anything positive or constructive to say, and he never shares any ideas."

"Where will John go after work? Maybe we should invite him out."

"I'm not sure, but I least expect him to go to the pub – he quit drinking about a month ago."

up to date

To 'keep up to date' is to manage to stay abreast of the latest developments or relevant information. To be 'up to date' can refer to the reaching of this standard, but it can also mean that something like a machine or a system is equipped with the latest tools, such that it is the most modern version. Here are a few examples of both types.

You're not keeping up with the rest of the group. You need to get up to date quickly so we can meet the deadline.

Sarah is new to the company. Can you please bring her up to date on all the projects we're working on from now until the end of the year?

I'm not allowed to eat dinner until I'm up to date with my homework, but I feel like I need to eat in order to have the energy to finish my homework.

My computer isn't up to date with the latest operating system available. Unless I download it soon, I expect there'll be certain applications I won't be able to use, and features of other apps that will be inefficient or completely non-responsive.

O



Obey

1. submit to the authority of (someone) or comply with (a law).
2. carry out (a command or instruction).
3. behave in accordance with (a general principle, natural law, etc.).

“obey” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+obey+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Obey someone

Obey a rule / law

I generally obey the law, but sometimes I feel like certain laws don't make sense.

She was usually mischievous and never followed orders, but on this occasion she obeyed her teacher.

He'll need to obey his mother's request for him to be polite to their guests if he wants a good gift for his birthday.

Noun: Obedience

The children were scolded and sent to their rooms for their disrespectful behaviour. “You will not be allowed to have any dessert or play with each other until you show some obedience,” their mother yelled.

Object

1. say something to express one's opposition to or disagreement with something.

“object” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+object+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Object to someone / something

I object to being forced to give my personal details to companies whenever I want to buy something on their website.

She objected to being filmed without her consent.

He objected to animals being raised in captivity because he believed they deserved to be free.

Noun: Object

The race can't commence because several objects are on the racecourse. The race can start once the objects are removed.

Observe

1. notice or perceive (something) and register it as being significant.
2. make a remark.

"observe" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+observe+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Observed someone / something

I've observed that the flowers are a lot more colourful in the springtime.

She observed the man in her store for thirty minutes, and when she looked away the man stole something.

We'll probably see more people admitting that the climate is changing when they observe the migration patterns of animals has changed abruptly and dramatically.

Noun: Observation

The scientist was asked to present her research and talk about her observations in the laboratory.

Obtain

1. get, acquire, or secure (something).

“obtain” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+obtain+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Obtain something (physical or abstract)

When I obtain new information I’ll change my opinion accordingly.

She obtained the files she needed to complete her report.

He’ll be arrested if he obtains an illegal weapon, regardless of whether or not he intends to use it.

Occur

1. happen; take place.
2. exist or be found to be present in a place or under a particular set of conditions.
3. (of a thought or idea) come into the mind of.

“occur” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+occur+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

To occur

While travelling overseas, it occurred to me that I should call my parents to let them know I was safe.

The Titanic was **en route** to America, but a collision occurred with an iceberg, and it sunk.

The football referees found it difficult to do a good job when several match-play incidents occurred at the same time.

Noun: Occurrence

The man thought it was strange that there hadn’t been any occurrences of alien abductions mentioned in the media in recent times.

Offend

1. cause to feel upset, annoyed, or resentful.
2. commit an illegal act.

“offend” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+offend+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Offend someone

Be offended by someone / something

I never mean to offend anyone, but occasionally I’ll say something that people misunderstand or **can’t help but** be insulted by.

The comedian made a joke about religion, and the religious man was offended.

She’ll offend the politician if she refuses to shake his hand.

Noun: Offence

It is an offence to drive through an intersection when the traffic lights are red.

Offer

1. present or proffer (something) for (someone) to accept or reject as desired.
2. provide (access or an opportunity).

“offer” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+offer+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Offer something to someone

I offer to help my friends when they’re in need of support.

She offered look after her colleague's house while her colleague was on holiday.

He'll surely be thanked for offering the hungry man some soup.

Noun: Offer

I've been told I'll get a job promotion, but I don't know if I'll accept the offer, because I'm also attracted to idea of quitting and travelling Europe.

Open

1. move (a door or window) so as to leave a space allowing access and vision.
2. unfold or be unfolded; spread out.

"open" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+open+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Open something

Open to something (like an idea or a proposal)

I'm open to their idea of renting an electric bike and riding the new bike trail near my house.

She opened the envelope and read the letter.

He opened the door and walked straight to the living room, then slumped into the sofa and watched tv.

Order

1. give an authoritative instruction to do something.
2. request (something) to be made, supplied, or served.

"order" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+order+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Order something

Order someone to do something

I haven't ordered anything from Uber, but I ordered from Grab when I lived in Vietnam.

She ordered a steak at the restaurant, and the waiter asked her how she wanted it cooked.

The mother ordered her son to stop playing video games.

He'll order the book online, **even though** it'll take 3 weeks to arrive.

Noun: Order

I asked for the shiraz and the medium-rare steak, but I think the waiter has forgotten my order.

Overflow

1. (especially of a liquid) flow over the brim of a receptacle.

"overflow" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+overflow+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

To overflow

Whenever I see the prison break scene in the movie The Shawshank Redemption, I overflow with positive emotions.

The glass overflowed with beer because the barman wasn't paying attention.

If the river overflows, the surrounding towns might get flooded.

Owe

1. have an obligation to pay or repay (something, especially money) in return for something received.
2. owe something, especially money, to.
3. be under a moral obligation to give someone (gratitude, respect, etc.).

“owe” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+owe+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Owe something to someone (or owe someone something)

I owe the government some money for partial payment of my university fees.

She owed her landlord \$500 in rent money.

If the man uses his credit card excessively, he'll owe the bank a lot of money.

Own

1. have (something) as one's own; possess.

“own” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+own+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Own something

I don't own a lot of possessions, because I'm trying to live a minimalist lifestyle.

She owned a lot of clothes, many of which she had **never even** worn.

He'll own a property in Australia before the end of the year.

Noun: Owner

“Who owns this car?”

“The owner is not here today. She must be having drinks with friends or co-workers.”

"How do you know that?"

"Because her car is here. She told me she only leaves her car here in the parking garage on nights she drinks with her friends or co-workers."

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

en route

'En route' is an adverb used with 'to' to indicate that someone or something is situated on the way to a thing or place that follows it in the sentence.

"Are there any places popular with tourists around here?"

"Yeah, there's a beautiful little waterfall en route to the ocean a little south of here. Make sure you turn left at the fork in the road. If you turn right, the road will take you to the highway."

When you go for your morning walk, you should walk down the laneway next to the basketball stadium en route to football oval. I often see some cute little rabbits down that lane.

"Hi, can you tell us how to get to the main part of town?"

"Sure. Take two lefts, then a right, and walk for ten minutes. If you don't turn right you can keep walking, and then you'll come to a gravel road en route to the beach."

My flight stopped in Guangzhou, China, en route to Seoul, South Korea.

even though

'Even though' is used to show that something has occurred despite more, related information that seems contrary to – and in some cases seems prohibitive of – that resultant situation or scenario, (thus on occasions causing some surprise).

Some of his friends thought it was odd that he didn't have a wife and kids, even though he'd explained clearly and often why he preferred being single.

He still preferred wearing his old, worn, faded jacket, even though his girlfriend had bought him a nicer, more expensive jacket.

The new resident decided to paint the exterior of his home multiple bright colours, even though he knew his neighbours strongly disapproved of his decision.

Even though dairy products make her feel a little nauseas, she occasionally has a slice of cake with milk and butter. Cake is just too irresistible.

never even

When we say 'never even' + the following information, we're using this word combination to help emphasise that not only has the first set of specified information failed to take place or exist, nor have any other related details that one might consider even more likely.

He hasn't been to Rome. In fact, he's never even been to Europe.

He's never hunted. He's never even gone camping.

I know she's never been drunk, because she's never even tried alcohol before.

Not only has she never been a contestant on a reality tv show, she's never even watched an episode of a reality tv show.

P



Pack

1. fill (a suitcase or bag) with clothes and other items needed for travel.
2. cram a large number of things into.

“pack” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pack+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pack something

Pack up (phrasal verb) (to pack, primarily for the purpose of making a space more neat and spacious)

Pack it in (phrasal verb) (to quit, usually because something has become too difficult)

She packed her mouth with bubble-gum so she wouldn't have to talk to her annoying neighbour.

He finished making the table then packed up his toolbox.

They weren't interested in finishing the difficult project. They decided to pack it in and focus on something else instead.

Noun: Pack

Each child was given a pack full of sweets and small toys as they left the birthday party.

Paddle

1. move through the water in a boat using a paddle or paddles.

“paddle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+paddle+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Paddle something

Paddle towards somewhere

It can be a little unnerving to be in a canoe in a wild river. You'd better hope you can paddle to safety.

He splashed his hands in the shallow water in an effort to paddle towards the shore.

"We're going to go to the end of the rapids, then paddle towards the campsite where the water is more calm," the instructor told the rafters in his dinghy.

Noun: Paddle

The people in the boat realized the engine had stopped, so they each grabbed a paddle and started rowing back to safety.

Paint

1. cover the surface of (something) with paint.
2. depict (someone or something) or produce (a picture) with paint.

"paint" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+paint+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Paint something

I painted the fence with two coats of paint.

His description painted the picture of a desperate man who would do anything for money.

She'll continue to paint for enjoyment regardless of how much money she makes, but she'd love to make enough money to paint full-time.

Noun: Paint

She took her brush and a bucket of paint and painted the wall in her living room.

Park

1. bring (a vehicle that one is driving) to a halt and leave it temporarily, typically in a car park or by the side of the road.

“park” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+park+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Park something (like transportation)

I don't like to park my car in the city, because parking costs are expensive in the city.

She parked her car in the shopping centre carpark.

If there's nowhere we can park the car, we'll simply have to drive home.

Part

1. (of two things) move away from each other.
2. leave someone's company.

“part” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+part+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Part something

Part ways (phrasal verb) (to leave from the same place to go in different directions)

I'm glad I have short hair, because I think it'd be annoying to have long hair that needs to be parted, tied, or brushed every day.

She parted her hair so that it was separated to make two pigtails.

They were having too many difficulties in their relationship, so they decided to part ways.

Noun: Part

He bought a computer desk from IKEA. He knew he wouldn't be able to use it straight away, because it came in several different parts that needed to be assembled.

Pass

1. move or cause to move in a specified direction.
2. go past or across; leave behind or on one side in proceeding.

"pass" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pass+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pass something / someone

Before the injured man could be free of pain, he needed to pass some kidney stones during urination.

We drove quickly on the highway and passed several cars.

"I'll need you to pass the peas and gravy to your father," the mother told her son. "He's had a hard day today and won't be in a good mood."

Noun: Pass

She was delighted to learn she had received a Pass on her exam.

Paste

1. coat with paste.

"paste" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+paste+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Paste something

I remember cutting out things I'd drawn and pasting them onto other pieces of paper when I was in primary school.

She pasted the newspaper clippings to the poster.

Sadly, the animal was hit by a truck – it looked like it had been pasted to the road.

Noun: Paste

The kids in the kindergarten love to do arts and crafts. Sometimes when making artwork they use paint, or cut pieces of paper and glue them together using a paste.

Pat

1. touch quickly and gently with the flat of the hand.

“pat” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pat+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pat something / someone

I like to pat my mum’s dog, but he doesn’t like to be patted vigorously in the morning.

She patted the cat's head.

They’ll pat the horse, brush it’s mane, then enter it into the equestrian tournament.

Noun: Pat

“Give the dog a pat,” the mother said to her child. “I promise it won’t bite.”

Pause

1. interrupt action or speech briefly.

“pause” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pause+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pause something (that is in motion)

I don't like **having to** pause a movie to respond to someone's questions about the plot.

He paused before speaking because he didn't want to say the wrong thing.

If someone knocks on their front door, they'll have to pause their video game to answer the door.

Noun: Pause

The child loved playing video games, so he was eager to leave the dinner table and continue playing a game that was on pause.

Peck

1. (of a bird) strike or bite something with its beak.

“peck” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+peck+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Peck something / someone

My brother uses his thumb and forefinger to peck my shoulder while I'm trying to do homework.

The bird pecked its beak against a nutshell.

We'll peck a hole in the fence in order to see what's happening in our neighbour's yard.

Noun: Peck

I assume the bird must have a very strong peck; it took a big divot out of the tree.

Pedal

1. move by working the pedals of a bicycle.

“pedal” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pedal+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pedal something (like a bicycle)

I think we should design bikes that power tv’s during sporting events. To keep the tv on, the viewer would need to ride the bike, thus causing him or her to get a good workout while abusing the athletes on field.

The cyclists pedalled their bikes from Seoul to Busan, South Korea.

The cyclist will pedal rapidly in order to arrive at his destination on time.

Noun: Pedal

I won’t be able to ride my bike if I can’t keep my feet on the pedals.

Peel

1. remove the outer covering or skin from (a fruit or vegetable).
2. (of a surface or object) lose parts of its outer layer or covering in small strips or pieces.

“peel” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+peel+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Peel something

I peeled the skin off an orange yesterday, but I usually cut the skin off with a knife.

The woman peeled her banana and ate it.

The man will peel the rind off the mandarin and throw it in the compost.

Noun: Peel

I put my banana peel in the trash.

Peep

1. look quickly and furtively at something, especially through a narrow opening.

“peep” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+peep+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Peep at someone / something

“I didn’t stare at him,” the woman said. “I peeped.”

He peeped at the lady while she was unaware of his presence.

She was curious about who was attending the private function, so she went toward the function room, slowly opened the door, and peeped through the gap. She could see some celebrities had been invited.

Noun: Peep

The woman was annoyed that the man kept staring at her breasts.

“Getting a good peep, are you?” she said, angrily.

Perform

1. carry out, accomplish, or fulfil (an action, task, or function).
2. present (a form of entertainment) to an audience.

“perform” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+perform+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Perform something (like a song)
Perform at some place (like a stadium)

I didn't perform in any stage plays or musicals when I was younger – I was too shy.

He performed at a music festival with his band.

If she performs well in the movie, she'll be given many accolades by fans and critics.

Noun: Performance

The acrobats bowed to signal they'd finished their performance, and the crowd stood and cheered.

Permit

1. officially allow (someone) to do something.

“permit” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+permit+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Permit something
Permit someone to do something

“If you're a true team player, you'll permit your teammates to borrow your equipment if they need it,” the manager told his players.

She permitted her friend to ride her new bike because he promised not to ride it further than the corner.

He had a heart condition, but his doctor permitted him to eat ice-cream once a week.

Noun: Permit

The local government official told the local resident that if he wanted to make a film at the park, he'd have to fill in an application form and get a permit.

Phone

1. contact someone by phone.

“phone” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+phone+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Phone someone

I haven't phoned anyone in years. Nowadays I just text or email.

She phoned her grandfather, using her mobile phone.

He'll phone the customer service number, but if nobody answers, he'll have to leave a message on the answering machine.

Noun: Phone

We used to communicate by sending letters, then we communicated by talking on phones, and now we use the internet to text each other.

Pick

1. detach and remove (a flower, fruit, or vegetable) from where it is growing.
2. choose (someone or something) from a number of alternatives.

“pick” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pick+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pick something / someone

Pick me up (phrasal verb) (to arrive (typically with transportation) to take someone to another place)

Pick something out (phrasal verb) (to choose something from a list of options)

I find it difficult to pick a good movie when looking on Netflix.

She was not picked to represent the basketball team.

“Can you please pick me up from the theatre on your way home tonight?”

He picked out a nice shirt to wear to the party.

Noun: Pick

Sometimes I'll use floss to get something out of my teeth, while other times I'll use a toothpick.

Pinch

1. grip (something, typically a person's flesh) tightly and sharply between finger and thumb.

“pinch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pinch+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pinch someone / something

I don't like it when people pinch me just so they can say: A pinch and a punch for the 1st day of the month.

She was so happy to win the prize that she pinched herself to make sure she wasn't dreaming.

She'll react angrily if her friend pinches her on the arm. Wouldn't you?

Noun: Pinch

The pinch you gave me yesterday has bruised my arm.

Pine

1. to feel very sad because one wants (something) or because one is not with (someone)

“pine” Merriam Webster. <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/pine%20for> (02 October, 2021)

Pine for something / someone (phrasal verb) (to feel a strong desire and longing for someone or something)

I haven't pined for much in my life, but lately I've been pining for the chance to do some more travel.

He loved her so much; he pined for her glowing smile and the warmth of her touch every night and day.

They'll be pining for water by the time they finish the marathon.

Place

1. put in a particular position.
2. find a home or employment for.

“place” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+place+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Place something / someone somewhere

I place my cup of tea on my computer desk every morning before I start working.

She took the plates and cutlery and placed them on the dining table.

We'll place the bird back in the wild when it's broken wing has healed.

Noun: Place

Italy is a great place to find good coffee, wine, pizza, and pasta.

Plan

1. decide on and make arrangements for in advance.

2. design or make a plan of (something to be made or built).

“plan” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+plan+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Plan something

Plan to do something

I plan to go for a long walk today.

He knew exactly what to say because he’d been planning his speech for months.

The engaged coupled like getting a lot of attention and spending a lot of money, so I think they’ll plan an extravagant wedding.

Noun: Plan

Sometimes when I travel I like to plan in advance so I can be confident about where I’m going and what activities to expect, while other times I make no plans because I like to be spontaneous and be surprised.

Plant

1. put (a seed, bulb, or plant) in the ground so that it can grow.

“plant” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+plant+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Plant something (like plant life, or something abstract, like an idea)

I know a lot of schools encourage students to learn about the environment and plant trees on outdoor excursions.

She planted the seeds in the soil and waited a few weeks for them to sprout.

They’ll plant a lot of trees and be satisfied knowing those trees will provide a lot of shade for people in years to come.

Noun: Plant

The city planners listened to the local resident explain why more plants should be added to the botanical garden and public parks.

Play

1. engage in activity for enjoyment and recreation rather than a serious or practical purpose.
2. take part in (a sport).

“play” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+play+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Play somewhere

Play something (like a toy, game, or musical instrument)

Play with something / someone

I **used to** play football, but **these days** I just watch football on tv.

The children made sandcastles and played on the beach.

She'll play her guitar and sing her most popular songs.

Noun: Play

The children put on costumes and performed in the play while their parents sat in the audience and watched.

Please

1. cause to feel happy and satisfied.
2. take only one's own wishes into consideration in deciding how to act or proceed.

“please” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+please+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Please oneself or someone else
Pleased to meet someone
Pleased to do something for someone
Pleased with something / someone
Pleased with / for someone

Some people are content to live a simple life, with humility, while others always need to be entertained and are very difficult to please.

He was pleased to see his football team win on the weekend.

She was not pleased with her husband when he walked through the house wearing dirty shoes.

Noun: Pleasure

The aspiring pilot got a lot of pleasure learning about all the different planes at the air show.

Plug

1. block or fill in (a hole or cavity).

“plug” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+plug+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Plug something

Plug something up (phrasal verb) (to plug something)

I find it difficult to plug a sink or bathtub when hot water is gushing over the sinkhole.

She plugged the sink so she could fill it with water.

He'll plug up the hole to prevent any more leakages.

Noun: Plug

I'll have to buy a plug for my kitchen sink because I've been wasting too much water while cleaning the dishes.

Point

1. direct someone's attention towards something by extending one's finger or something held in one's hand.

“point” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+point+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Point

Point at someone / something

Point something out (phrasal verb) (to draw someone's attention to something, usually in such a way as to clarify something that may be unclear)

Have you ever tried to point at yourself? How does it make you feel?

The teacher pointed at the whiteboard to direct the students' attention.

The old man is going to have to point at the naughty boy and tell him to behave.

Noun: Point (to have a point = to have something important or essential to convey)

The professor spoke for over an hour, and the students in the lecture room grew frustrated with his ramblings; they were there to learn, and his speech didn't seem to have a point.

Poke

1. jab or prod (someone or something) with one's finger or a sharp object.
2. thrust (something, such as one's head) in a particular direction.

“poke” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+poke+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Poke someone / something

I, like most people, get frustrated quickly when people poke me while I'm trying to concentrate on something.

The man's girlfriend was sleeping and late for work, so he poked her shoulder to wake her up.

He's a naughty boy; I can tell he's about to poke the cat with a stick.

Polish

1. make the surface of (something) smooth and shiny by rubbing it.

"polish" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+polish+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Polish something

I'll be happy to polish your kitchen floor if you get me tickets for the football final.

She bought some varnish and used it to polish the floorboards in her kitchen.

She'll go to a beauty salon and a beautician will polish her fingernails.

Noun: Polish

I used a tan-coloured polish on my kitchen floorboards. The polish protects the floorboards and makes them look glossy.

Pop

1. make a light explosive sound.

"pop" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pop+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pop something

Pop in (phrasal verb) (to make an unexpected visit, though typically not unwelcome)

Pop out (phrasal verb) (to leave one's indoor location, typically just briefly)

I'm not very good at popping the cork on a bottle of champagne.

The man knew it was time to turn off the microwave because the popcorn had almost finished popping.

He's just going to pop in to the shops for some milk and bread.

I've been spending too much time on the computer, so I must remember to pop out for at least half an hour to go for a walk.

Possess

1. have as belonging to one; own.

"possess" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+possess+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Possess something

I don't possess a lot of material things.

The man possessed an uncanny ability to always arrive at meetings on time.

She'll go to the auction, and by the end of the day she'll possess a precious jewel.

Noun: Possession

Some people believe the harder you work the more you earn, but many people who work hard live in poverty, while others who don't work at all have a lot of wealth and possessions.

Post

1. display (a notice) in a public place.
2. announce or publish (something, especially a financial result).

“post” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+post+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Post something to someone Post someone something

I don't know if it's worth posting mail to my friend in Taiwan, because postal workers have threatened to go on strike.

He went to the post office and posted a letter to his aunt.

She'll probably post another status update on Facebook, despite the fact it never makes her happy.

Noun: Post

My last Instagram post was a collection of photos of a beautiful sunset.

Pour

1. flow rapidly in a steady stream.
2. come or go in a steady stream and in large numbers.

“pour” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pour+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pour something (usually into, or out of something)

I like to pour thick smoothies from a blender into a large glass.

She poured him a drink.

He'll pour some gin into the glass, then take a sip.

Practise

1. perform (an activity) or exercise (a skill) repeatedly or regularly in order to acquire, improve or maintain proficiency in it.

“practise” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+practice+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Practise something

I’d like to try a new hobby, but I don’t really want to do something that requires me to practice every day before getting any good at it.

She bought a new tennis racquet and practiced her serving technique.

He practiced boxing at his local gym, and needed several more weeks of practice before being proficient enough to fight in a competition.

Noun: Practice

I ran 10 laps around the oval at football practice last Thursday.

Preach

1. deliver a sermon or religious address to an assembled group of people, typically in church.
2. publicly proclaim or teach (a religious message or belief).
3. earnestly advocate (a belief or course of action).

“preach” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+preach+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Preach something to a person or group

There’s no point in preaching your message to someone who already agrees with you. It’s called ‘preaching to the converted.’

The preacher preached a message of love and forgiveness.

She preached to the church choir.

Precede

1. come before (something) in time.
2. come before in order or position.

“precede” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+precede+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Precede someone / something

Most people know about him and his views, but don't know a lot about his personal life; his reputation precedes him.

The arrival of the plane preceded the arrival of the car.

The planting of a seed precedes the growing of the seed.

Prepare

1. make (something) ready for use or consideration.
2. make (someone) ready or able to do or deal with something.

“prepare” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+prepare+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Prepare something

Prepare for something

Prepare someone for something

Prepare to do something

I like to cook for guests, but I don't enjoy preparing the dinner table.

She wasn't prepared for the meeting, which meant she was very nervous.

He's prepared to go to prison for vandalising his neighbour's property.

They'll prepare for the long journey ahead by taking extra supplies.

Noun: Preparation

The campers did a lot of preparation for their camping trip so they could have a safe and fun vacation.

Present

1. give or award formally or ceremonially.
2. give someone (a gift or award) in a formal or ceremonial way.
3. show or offer (something) for others to scrutinize or consider.
4. formally deliver (a cheque or bill) for acceptance or payment.
5. formally introduce (someone) to someone else.

"present" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+present+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Present something to someone or some group

Present someone with something

I never enjoyed presenting oral assignments in class.

She presented the award to the winner.

He was presented with a medal of honour for his service to his country.

The lawyer will present evidence in the trial against the accused man.

Noun: Present

Kids whose parents have a lot of money generally receive more expensive presents than kids whose parents don't have a lot of money.

Preserve

1. maintain (something) in its original or existing state.
2. treat (food) to prevent its decomposition.

“preserve” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+preserve+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Preserve something (including abstract things like ideas and beliefs)

I used to work in a factory that preserved fruits.

The food was preserved for longer because it was placed in the fridge.

The historian tried her best to preserve the culture of the ancient tribe.

Noun: Preservation

The preservation of our forests, waterways, and entire ecosystem is necessary for the health all plant and animal life.

Press

1. move or cause to move into a position of contact with something by exerting continuous physical force.
2. apply pressure to (something) to flatten, shape, or smooth it, typically by ironing.

“press” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+press+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Press something

Press someone on / for something

I need to press a knob while turning a dial to light my oven.

I ate at a diner once, and the chef wanted to know what I thought of the quiche he'd cooked. I wanted to leave the restaurant and return to my car, but he really pressed me for an answer. I told him the quiche was a little dry, and I think he nearly cried.

The woman on the bus pressed a red button to alert the driver that she wanted to get off at the next stop.

It is particularly important to know which button to press on the console of a spacecraft or a Formula 1 car.

Pretend

1. behave so as to make it appear that something is the case when in fact it is not.

“pretend” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pretend+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pretend to do something

Pretend to be someone

I think we lose the ability to pretend as we get older because we're not encouraged to use our imagination as adults.

The man wasn't employed by the store, but he pretended to work there because he wanted to talk to the customers.

The little boy is going to swim in the water and pretend to be a fish.

Noun: Pretence

The health official made comments to the public under the pretence of having read and understood the science related to the pandemic; it was later revealed he knew nothing about the science, thus his comments were misleading and potentially dangerous.

Prevent

1. keep (something) from happening.

“prevent” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+prevent+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Prevent something from happening
Prevent someone from doing something

A lot of people need to be reminded that a good diet and regular exercise can help prevent illnesses later in life.

The middle-aged man was prevented from buying a motorcycle because his wife had control of their bank account, and she wanted their money spent on other things.

The roadworks are going to prevent the driver from taking his usual route.

Noun: Prevention

Many people are doing great work in looking for a cure for diseases and cancers, but this shouldn't distract people from the fact that a healthy lifestyle can help people avoid many illnesses. As the saying goes, prevention is better than cure.

Prick

1. make a small hole in (something) with a sharp point; pierce slightly.

"prick" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+prick+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Prick something
Prick someone with something

I was pricked when the nurse put the needle in my shoulder.

The little girl cried because she was pricked by the cactus.

If he's not careful fixing his shirt, he'll accidentally prick his finger with the sewing needle.

Noun: Prick

A small prick had grown on the stem of the rosebush, and the sharp edge of the prick scraped my skin when I accidentally brushed past it.

Print

1. produce (books, newspapers, etc.), especially in large quantities, by a mechanical process involving the transfer of text or designs to paper.
2. write (text) clearly without joining the letters together.

“print” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+print+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Print something

I haven't had to print my resume for years, but I'll have to do it again soon.

She went to the library and printed the ticket for her flight.

We'll print several brochures, then give them to someone to deliver to people in the town.

Noun: Printer

The maintenance man had to be called to fix the printer because there was no ink left in the cartridge and nobody else knew how to refill it.

Produce

1. make or manufacture from components or raw materials.
2. cause (a particular result or situation) to happen or exist.

“produce” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+produce+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Produce something

I was only supposed to be the writer and director of my student film, but I ended up doing the producing as well.

She produced a music video for her friend's band.

The injured hiker was afraid he would get an infection if his wound was left untreated, so he was relieved to see someone with medical experience produce a first aid kit from a backpack.

Noun: Production

The production of canned peaches was not able to proceed, because evidence emerged of a bacteria that had contaminated unknown portions of fruits inside the factory where the peaches were processed.

Program

1. provide (a computer or other machine) with coded instructions for the automatic performance of a task.
2. arrange according to a plan or schedule.

“program” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+program+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Program something / someone (to do something)

I can program myself to maintain a regular exercise routine, but I definitely can't program a computer or any sort of programmable technology.

Some planes are programmed to land automatically if the pilot is unable to operate the craft manually.

We believe the newest computers will be programmed to operate at faster speeds than computers that were made in the past.

Noun: Program

You need the correct software program to operate certain applications on a computer.

Promise

1. assure someone that one will definitely do something or that something will happen.
2. give good grounds for expecting (a particular occurrence).

“promise” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+promise+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Promise something to someone Promise someone something

I don't like to make promises; often they seem easy to keep in the present moment, but future events or revelations can make those promises hard to keep, so I just refrain from making them **altogether**.

He promised his friends he would bring beer to the party, but he was not the most reliable person, so not a lot of people were confident he'd **follow through**.

The politician will likely break her promise to lower taxes, and the citizens will become very angry.

Noun: Promise

He made a promise to his girlfriend to behave more responsibly, but she still had doubts over whether he could curb his childish behaviour.

Protect

1. keep safe from harm or injury.

“protect” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+protect+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Protect something / someone (from something / someone)

Many people hurt others with their lack of communication, not because they want to hurt others, but because they're protecting themselves from revealing things that might make them vulnerable and scared.

He protected his skin from the heat of the sun by applying a lot of sunscreen.

She's too loyal – she'll probably accept responsibility for her colleague's mistake in order to protect her colleague's reputation.

Noun: Protection

The politician required protection at public events because her political rivals were inciting violence against her.

Provide

1. make available for use; supply.
2. make adequate preparation for (a possible event).

"provide" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+provide+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Provide something to something / someone / some group Provide someone something

I can provide you with a guarantee that this sentence will finish in less than five seconds.

The applicant provided the prospective employer with her resume, just as the employer had requested.

The elephant will provide a lot of entertainment at the zoo, but it should be free, in the wild.

Noun: Provision

Many of the local people's homes were destroyed in the floods, so the government sent in the military personnel to make sure those affected had the necessary provisions like food, blankets and water.

Pull

1. exert force on (someone or something) so as to cause movement towards oneself.
2. move steadily in a specified direction or manner.

“pull” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pull+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pull something / someone

Last night I pulled a long stick out of a firepit and repositioned it over the flames.

The woman pulled the door open and walked through.

The gardener is going to pull some weeds out of the ground so the other plants can flourish.

Noun: Pulley

“A wheel with a grooved rim around which a cord passes, which acts to change the direction of a force applied to the cord and is used to raise heavy weights.”

Pump

1. force (liquid, gas, etc.) to move by or as if by means of a pump.
2. draw (milk) from the breast using a breast pump, typically in order to feed a baby by means of a bottle.

“pump” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+pump+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Pump something

Pump someone up (phrasal verb) (to get someone motivated, or to inflate someone’s reputation or status)

I recently made an outdoor shower suitable for camping. It included a hose, a nozzle, and a container with water. I have to pump the container in order to create enough pressure for the water to gush out when the nozzle is squeezed.

He pumped up the air mattress so he had something he could sleep on.

She'll stop at a petrol station and pump up her car tires with the air hose.

Noun: Pump

The pool pump helps to circulate the water so that treatment chemicals can spread throughout the whole pool.

Punch

1. strike with the fist.
2. press (a button or key on a machine).

"punch" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+punch+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Punch someone / something

Punch in (phrasal verb) (to register the start time of one's shift at their place of work)

Punch out (phrasal verb) x2 (1. to register the time at the end of one's shift, at their place of work) (2. to punch someone unconscious)

I regret punching my brother when we were little.

She was so offended by the man's comments that she punched him in the face.

The boxers punched each other several times.

Some workplaces require their employees to take a card and put it in a small machine, which then punches a hole in the card. The positioning or the insignia on the punched card indicates the time the action took place. This is done at the start and end of a worker's shift, so their boss knows when they "punched in" to commence their work, and when they "punched out" to finish their work.

The boxer is clearly more proficient than his opponent, and will punch out the lesser athlete before the 3rd round.

Noun: Punch

The boxer received a strong punch to the jaw, but kept his feet and fought on with courage.

Puncture

1. make a puncture in (something).
2. cause a sudden collapse of (mood or feeling).

“puncture” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+puncture+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Puncture something

The thorn punctured my bike tire, and I was forced to walk all the way home.

The front tire was punctured when the woman rode her bike over a nail.

The collision was so strong that the man's lung was punctured.

Noun: Puncture

My car tire rolled over an upright screw and suffered a puncture.

Punish

1. inflict a penalty or sanction on (someone) as retribution for an offence, especially a transgression of a legal or moral code.
2. inflict a penalty or sanction on someone for (such an offence).

“punish” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+punish+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Punish someone (usually for something)

I think most people don't **hold themselves to the standards** they apply to others; we generally want others to be punished for their mistakes, but we try to make excuses and avoid being punished for our mistakes.

The criminal was punished for his crimes.

The boy will be punished for lying to his parents.

Noun: Punishment

My memory is a little foggy, but I vaguely recall throwing a cricket ball into my brother's window when I was a child. I'm sure my parents gave me some sort of punishment, like no tv or dessert for a week.

Push

1. exert force on (someone or something) in order to move them away from oneself.
2. move forward by using force to pass people or cause them to move aside.

"push" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+push+meaning> (02 October, 2021)

Push someone / something

Push through (phrasal verb) (to persist and get past an obstacle)

Push someone away (phrasal verb) (to reject someone's suggestion or offer or advances)

I heard an interesting thought experiment a few years ago. Someone asked the question: Can God create a rock that is too big for Him to push?

He pushed the door open and walked through.

Some trainers at the gym will tell you to push through the pain if you want to make gains. "No pain, no gain," is a well-known phrase.

Every time she tries to help him he pushes her away.

She'll push the shopping cart down the aisle and grab the items on her shopping list.

Noun: Push-up

I usually try to do 45 push-ups as part of my exercise routine, but recently I've started doing the bench press exercise with weights.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

having to

'Having to' is used for a continuous action that one feels compelled or required to complete. For this reason the speaker might express frustration; because they're in an inescapable position (and having to get out of it).

I'd love to come to the beach, but I'm having to look after my niece and nephew.

The athlete can't come to the meeting, because he's having to do a random drug test.

Having to tell family members that their loved one has passed away must be one of the most difficult jobs imaginable.

She thought that having to listen to boring lectures was unnecessary, counter-productive and annoying. She felt much more relaxed, confident and productive doing research from home.

used to

'Used to' can be used in multiple ways. If you're 'used to doing something' you've done it on multiple occasions and generally feel comfortable doing it as a result.

Vietnamese karaoke annoyed me during my first few days in Vietnam, but I got used to it after a while.

"I don't like wearing a mask."

"Don't worry, in time you'll get used to it."

"I doubt it. I think wearing a mask all day will always annoy me."

The grey clouds in Edinburgh bothered me at first, but I got used to them eventually – I hardly even noticed them after a couple of months.

I'm not used to writing poems with a pen, because I usually use a computer.

If you 'used to do something' it informs the listener of a habit, routine, or activity that the speaker did in the past, generally ranging in frequency

from occasionally to often, but in which they no longer engage or participate. It might be an activity they will pursue at some time in the future, but it's usually used in a way that makes clear that there is no intention or desire to do it again.

I used to drink coffee every day, but now I just drink tea.

He used to ride a motorcycle, but he decided to quit after having a big crash.

She used to work as a banker in Santiago, but now she's a tour guide in Valparaiso.

We used to live in the same apartment, but now we live in separate homes.

Finally, we can see 'used' + 'to' to refer to the functions that a machine, tool, system, process etc. is designed to perform.

The headlights on a car are used to help drivers see the road and other road users.

Crop harvesters are used to, unsurprisingly, harvest crops.

Sunscreen is used to protect skin from the damaging effects of the sun.

Hammers are used to force nails into wood in order to build or maintain a structure.

these days

'These days' refers to present day and time, and includes the recent past. It's often used in a way that (depending on the context) draws attention to a difference or differences between norms of previous generations and the norms familiar to us today, by way of comparison.

People used to play outside, but these days everyone stays inside playing video games or looking at their phone.

"What are you up to these days?"

"Oh, not much. I'm working out every day and keeping a journal."

"These days it seems like everyone under the age of 20 is addicted to social media."

*"Oh yeah? What gave you that idea?"
"I keep reading about it on Twitter."*

*"We've got a lot of options for entertainment these days."
"A lot of entertainment exists, but your options are still limited by how much money you have."*

I can tell

'I can tell' is a way of saying 'I am able to see / understand / acknowledge / recognise / realise etc.' 'I can tell' is often used as a way to let the reader or listener know that we have been able to extrapolate information and make inferences, or come to a confident understanding of the available information.

It can also be used in a more literal sense, whereby one would communicate that "I can tell you a story," for example. For now, here are some examples in the context of one's recognition or estimation of something:

She could tell by the way he behaved that there was something he wasn't telling her.

*"Do you want to have a drink in that bar?"
"Nah, I can tell from the music and the cheering that it's a very young crowd. A couple of old guys like us wouldn't be welcome."
"Ah, that's rubbish! You're only as old as you feel."*

I can tell it's getting close to Christmas, because every day there are more and more homes decorated with Christmas lights.

We didn't know exactly what time it was, but we could tell it was sometime in the late afternoon, due to the long shadows that were cast across the road.

altogether

Altogether is like 'completely' or 'totally.' It implies that someone or something is fully (meaning, altogether) + insert required verb.

He's altogether frightening.

It can be in place of 'all things considered' in the context of a feeling being considered in totality:

Altogether it was a great night.

Or a number of people:

There were 66 people at the meeting altogether.

Here are a few more examples that relate to an overall feeling about a situation or thing:

I had to leave that place because the music was altogether terrible.

My sister's new puppy is altogether adorable. I can't wait to see it again.

It was sad to hear the council would cut down the beautiful old oak tree in the centre of town, but watching it fall unexpectedly onto the retirement home was altogether tragic.

Some of the kids got a bit dirty from playing in the rain and the puddles, but altogether it was a lot of fun.

follow through

To 'follow through' with something is to complete it. It is to adhere to a process in a way that ensures a task has been fully and satisfactorily performed. It's often used in the context of sport, or in the context of one who may have agreed to undertake a role without much forethought to the level of difficulty that the final stages present. Someone, therefore, who is known for their ability to follow through on something is often well respected and held in high-esteem. Conversely, identifying someone as a person who never or rarely follows through disparages the individual for being unreliable and / or lazy.

A good golf technique involves a good follow through, because if you don't commit to the full range of motion, your shot will be compromised.

He reasoned that if he wanted to win back the affections of his girlfriend, he couldn't just write a half-hearted letter asking for her forgiveness; he needed to be vulnerable and share his emotions, and follow through with a commitment to communicating openly and often.

She'd been unreliable in the past, but she proved her doubters wrong by following through on her next big project. Everyone was surprised and impressed with the quality of her work.

The employees got together and decided that if their boss didn't follow through with the promised pay rise, they would all quit at that same time.

hold themselves to the standards

If you 'hold yourself to a standard' it means you have set the parameters for what standard you are willing to accept. To hold yourself to that level is to ensure that you – or others to whom you apply the standard – reach it, and typically what we mean when using this language is that some form of repercussion or modification is required if that standard is not met.

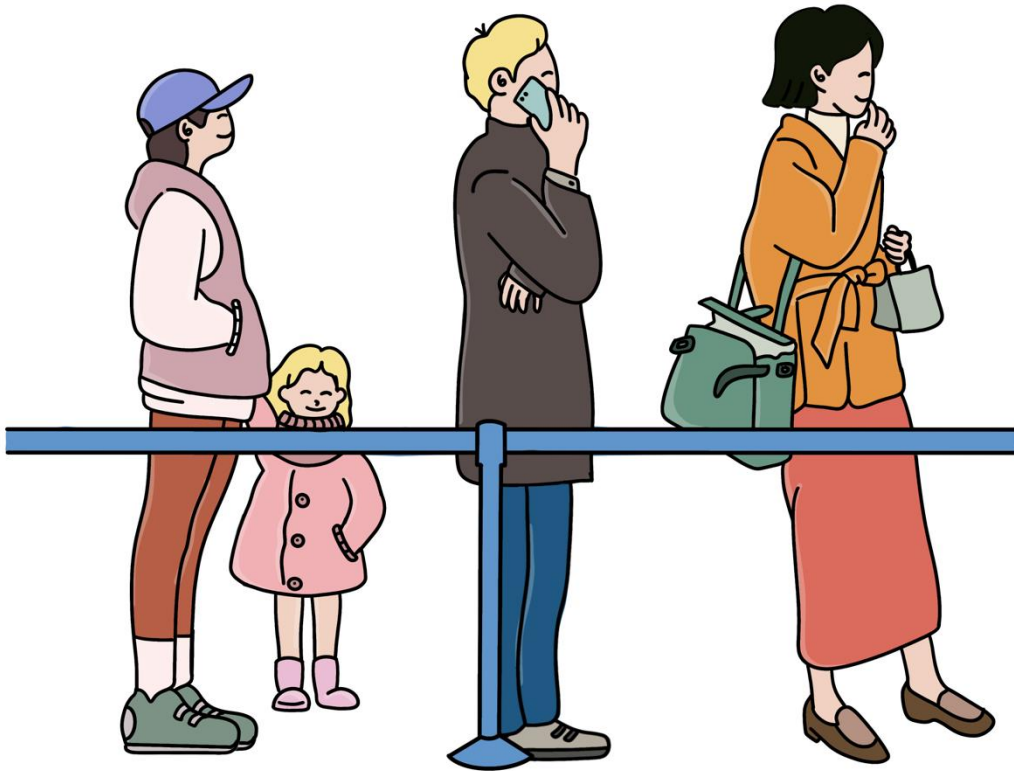
It's easy for people to say what they'd do in a difficult situation, but it's not so easy to do those things when that situation arises. This causes some people to hold others to high standards that they themselves fail to meet when they're dealing with the same problem.

I don't worry too much about what others say about me, because I have high standards and I hold myself to those standards. I'm far more critical of myself than others tend to be.

She held herself to a high standard, which is why her most recent poor performance was so surprising.

We hold public officials to a high standard, but they still continue to lie, cheat, and underdeliver.

Q



Question

1. ask (someone) questions, especially in an official context.

“question” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+question+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Question someone / something

I question the wisdom in completely defunding the police force. Better policies, recruitment, and training seem like wiser areas to focus on.

The police questioned several eyewitnesses.

The parents questioned why their child was getting into trouble with other students.

Noun: Question

Teachers often say there is no such thing as a stupid question in order to make students feel comfortable about expressing their ignorance; everybody starts from a position of not knowing before knowing, so no one should feel embarrassed – especially in an educational setting – about speaking up in order to learn.

Queue

1. take one's place in a queue.

“queue” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+queue+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Queue for something

We queue for things because it allows us to be civil, respectful, and avoid chaos.

I didn't have time to queue behind other customers in the bank in Colombia, because I needed a stamp to verify my visa application before

the visa office closed. If I didn't get the application in that day, I wouldn't have been allowed into Brazil the following week.

The people at the bus stop will form a queue so they can board the bus in an orderly manner.

Noun: Queue

There are often queues to get into popular stores. I once stood in a queue and waited 45 minutes to get a croissant. Many customers remarked that the croissant from that store was delicious, but when I finally tried it, I realised it was – while **indeed** tasty – not worth waiting 45 minutes for.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

indeed

'Indeed' has the effect of sounding a bit formal, and is used as a way to politely affirm or emphasise a previous statement or a claim. When used at the start of a sentence, it shows that what follows in the sentence will be information in support of claims that have come before. We can use it to concur with something already said, or as a precursor that signals an offering of yet more information that further supports the previous claims.

"Were you in Paris at midnight on May 24th?"

"Indeed, I was in a hotel room in Paris by 8pm that night."

"Did you enjoy the opera?"

"Indeed, it was a riveting performance from start to finish."

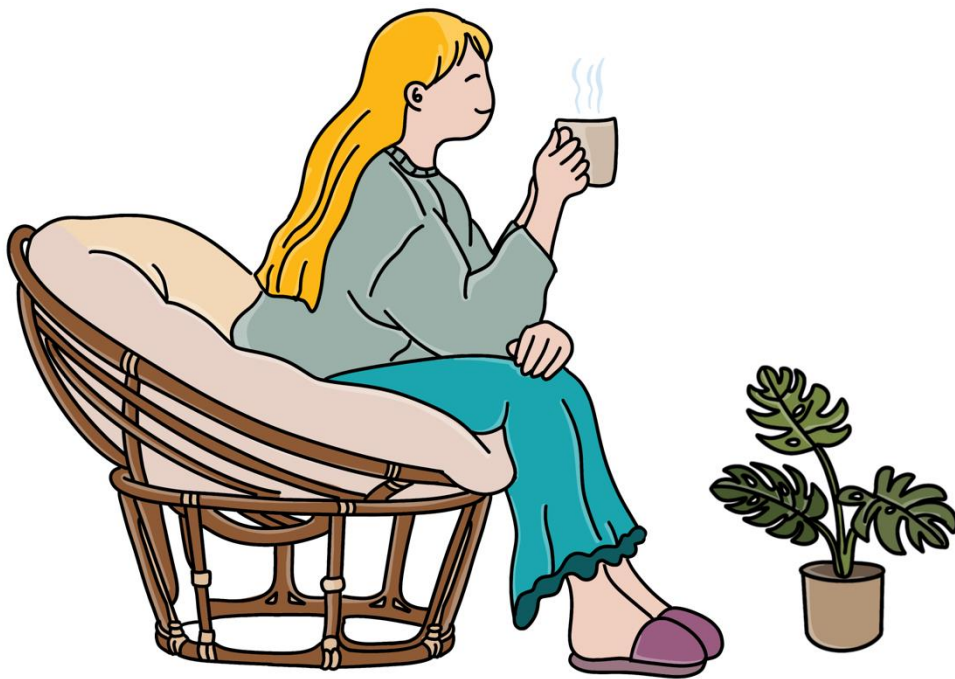
Hi, I'm wondering if you have any more of that organic chai that I like?"

"Indeed, we had some more delivered yesterday. How much would you like?"

"Was it a good idea to bring a jacket on this camping trip."

"Indeed, it might get a little chilly here later tonight."

R



Race

1. compete with another or others to see who is fastest at covering a set course or achieving an objective.
2. move or progress swiftly or at full speed.

“race” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+race+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Race someone / something

I think I’ll enjoy the Formula 1 sprint race tonight.

They raced their high-powered cars on a long stretch of road.

The V8 Supercars will race around Mount Panorama near the town of Bathurst in October.

Noun: Race

Every 2nd Sunday I watch a motorcycle race. Usually 2 or 3 riders crash each race.

Radiate

1. emit (energy, especially light or heat) in the form of rays or waves.
2. diverge or spread from or as if from a central point.

“radiate” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+radiate+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Radiate something (like light, energy, or an emotion)

My friend thinks his emerald radiates positive energy.

The stars in the night sky radiated light and heat. We could see the stars, but obviously couldn’t feel the heat.

We'll be radiating with positivity after the 2 week, silent meditation retreat.

Noun: Radiation

Microwaves emit a form of electromagnetic radiation.

Rain

1. rain falls.

"queue" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rain+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

To Rain

Rain somewhere

Rain on someone / something

When it rains on a racetrack, the road becomes slippery and more accidents occur.

The town was in danger of flooding because it had rained for several hours.

It rained heavily, so a lot of people needed to use an umbrella.

Noun: Rain

I like summer because everything seems so much more colourful when the sun is out, but I **don't mind** cold winter days when there's not too much wind and rain.

Raise

1. lift or move to a higher position or level.
2. increase the amount, level, or strength of.

"raise" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+raise+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Raise someone / something

I used to work for a company that raises money for a heart research organisation.

The government raised the minimum wage in an effort to help get people out of poverty.

Those thoughtful parents will raise their children well.

Noun: Raise

I work very hard all day, but my boss has never given me a raise. I should find a job that'll pay me a decent salary.

Reach

1. stretch out an arm in a specified direction in order to touch or grasp something.
2. arrive at; get as far as.

"reach" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+reach+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Reach something / someone / some place (real or conceptual)

Reach for something / someone

Reach out to someone (phrasal verb) (to contact someone for support)

My football team was not able to reach the finals this year.

The child reached his arm upward in an effort to grab a cookie from the bench.

A lot of people will tell you, you have to reach for the stars, meaning you should strive to achieve a great goal regardless of how attainable it may seem. I believe there's nothing wrong with living a simple life, as long as you're also a responsible person who values love and kindness.

A lot of homes were damaged in the bushfire, but many community members reached out to those in need and provided support.

Noun: Reach

A boxer with a long reach is often able to use the long extension of his arm to land punches at a safer distance than that of an opponent with a comparatively shorter reach.

Realise

1. become fully aware of (something) as a fact; understand clearly.
2. cause to happen.

“realise” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+realise+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Realise something

I realise Australia is close to New Zealand, but some of the landscapes are vastly different.

The old man realised he was no longer capable of driving his car safely, so he sold it.

A lot of people don't realise that they only listen to statements that support opinions they already hold.

Noun: Realisation

The realisation that the Earth is round is one that most people come to by the time they're in primary school.

Receive

1. be given, presented with, or paid (something).
2. suffer, experience, or be subject to (specified treatment).

“receive” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+receive+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Receive something

It's been ages since I've received a letter in the mail.

The man received a letter in the mail. He was pleased to see it was from his brother, who he hadn't heard from in quite some time.

They'll be very upset when they find out that the politician representing their district has received money from large corporations.

Noun: Reception

The family couldn't watch the tv show at dinnertime because the tv had very bad reception. They couldn't understand why the signal was so weak. It was a brand new television and the weather outside was perfect.

Recognise

1. identify (someone or something) from having encountered them before; know again.
2. acknowledge the existence, validity, or legality of.

“recognise” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+recognise+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Recognise someone / something

An old friend of mine thought that I ignored her, but that's not entirely true; she looked a lot different than she did the last time I saw her, so I didn't recognise her.

She recognised the man on the stage; she had seen him on television.

If he wants to be a good talent scout, he'll have to improve his ability to recognise the athletes who are most likely to develop into champions.

Noun: Recognition

Why aren't doctors and scientists more respected? They do great work, but we as a society give them less recognition than politicians and social media influencers.

Record

1. set down in writing or some other permanent form for later reference.
2. convert (sound or a performance) into a permanent form for subsequent reproduction or broadcast.

"record" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+record+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Record something

I'll have to read this document while I record my voice so people can listen to the audio as they read.

The musician recorded his third album.

She's worried that her boss will verbally harass her, so she's going to secretly record their conversation on her phone.

Noun: Record x2

1. Sally stated for the record that she had never seen the man the police were trying to track down.
2. Some people call those wide, black, circular disks that spin on a turntable and play music "records," but most people these days refer to them as "vinyls."

Reduce

1. make smaller or less in amount, degree, or size.
2. bring someone or something to (a worse or less desirable state or condition).

“reduce” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+reduce+meaning> (03
October, 2021)

Reduce something

I should really reduce the amount of time I spend looking at my phone if I want to avoid getting a headache late at night.

The government reduced spending on welfare programs, making it hard for people who needed those programs.

She reduced the number of calories she consumed per day and started losing weight as a result.

He'll reduce the size of the balloon by letting some air out.

Noun: Reduction

People will most likely start buying homes in greater numbers when there's a significant reduction in the price of homes.

Reflect

1. (of a surface or body) throw back (heat, light, or sound) without absorbing it.
2. think deeply or carefully about.

“reflect” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+reflect+meaning> (03
October, 2021)

Reflect something

Reflect on something (like a situation, idea, or occurrence)

Reflect off / onto something

I think it's interesting to reflect on the lives of human beings before modern civilisations emerge.

The skiers were sunburnt by the light reflecting off the snow.

The wounded daredevil reflected on his decision to fight a bear in a cage, and he concluded that it wasn't a wise thing to do.

Noun: Reflection

Some people don't realise that – although it's cold – you can get pretty badly sunburnt on the snowfields; the reflection of sunlight is directed to your exposed skin.

Refuse

1. indicate or show that one is not willing to do something.

“refuse” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+refuse+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Refuse someone / something

My mum and dad threatened to withhold my dinner when I was a child, for refusing to clean my room.

He refused to comment on the allegations until his lawyer arrived.

She'll refuse to go shopping with her mother because they just had a heated argument.

Noun: Refuse

Trash is another word for refuse. When we use the word as a verb the emphasis is on the 2nd syllable (ReFUSE), whereas a noun has the emphasis placed on the 1st syllable (REFuse).

Regret

1. feel sad, repentant, or disappointed over (something that one has done or failed to do).

“regret” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rerget+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Regret something (that one has done, or failed to do)

I suppose there are a few things in life I regret, but if I didn't make those mistakes I probably wouldn't be where I am today.

He regretted eating too much and causing himself to feel sick.

She'll regret entering the marathon when she realises she isn't fit enough to finish the race.

The grandfather told his granddaughter to fill her life with many experiences. "Don't be afraid to be bold and step out of your comfort zone, because at the end of your life you'll regret not trying new things when you had the chance," he said.

Noun: Regret

Often, people get toward the end of their life and say their greatest regret is spending too much time at work, and not enough quality time with family and friends.

Reign

1. hold royal office; rule as monarch.

"reign" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+reign+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Reign over someone / some group / some place

I don't think I'd enjoy the responsibilities of reigning an entire nation.

A lot of people believe America reigns over the rest of the world because they're eager to use their vast military powers.

"Our king will reign over this entire region, this time tomorrow afternoon," the General told his soldiers.

Noun: Reign

The reign of the British Empire lasted from 1815 to 1914. In that time the British Empire added roughly 10 million square miles and 400 million people.

Reject

1. dismiss as inadequate, unacceptable, or faulty.

“reject” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+reject+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Reject something (like an idea or proposal)

Reject someone

I reject the suggestion that the mainstream news is a good source for objective facts about the world.

He was heartbroken because the girl he liked told him **she was not interested in him**.

If she’s offered two different jobs, she’ll reject the one with the lower wage.

Noun: Rejection

Her rejection of the teenage boy made him feel so sad, but he was glad he found the courage to ask her out.

Rejoice

1. feel or show great joy or delight.

“rejoice” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rejoice+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rejoice over something (like an event, or some news)

Rejoice with someone

I rejoiced when the government announced that restrictions on travel would be lifted.

The woman rejoiced when her doctor told her she was finally pregnant, because she and her husband had been trying to have a baby for a long time.

Most Americans rejoiced when Barack Obama became the President in 2008.

Relax

1. make or become less tense or anxious.
2. make (a rule or restriction) less strict.

“relax” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+relax+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Relax

To be relaxed

I relax by listening to a podcast while I walk.

He was feeling very relaxed while receiving a nice massage.

She’s worried that her house could be damaged in the storm, but she’ll relax when the weatherman explains that the worst of the storm has passed.

Noun: Relaxation

She felt a deep sense of relaxation whenever she sat in the reclining massage chair.

Release

1. allow or enable to escape from confinement; set free.
2. allow (something) to move, act, or flow freely.

“release” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+release+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Release someone / something

I sometimes dream of breaking into a zoo and releasing all of the animals. I realise that this wouldn't be a smart or ethical thing for me to do in reality.

The prisoner was released from jail after serving his sentence.

When dopamine is released into his body, it'll boost his focus and concentration.

Noun: Release

The zookeeper opened the cage and the once injured eagle stepped out and flew away. The crowd of onlookers gasped and cheered – it was clear they were touched by the bird's release.

Rely

1. depend on with full trust or confidence.
2. be dependent on.

“rely” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rely+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rely on someone / something

I rely on the company of friends and good humour to improve my mood, occasionally.

He relied on his parents to drive him to soccer practice because he wasn't old enough to drive.

It's better to feel confident and happy by empowering yourself, rather than relying on other people to make you happy.

Noun: Reliance

The boy thought it would be exciting to be home alone, but his reliance on his mother's caretaking meant that when she left without him he was anxious and scared.

Remain

1. continue to exist, especially after other similar people or things have ceased to do so.
2. be left over or outstanding after others or other parts have been completed, used, or dealt with.

"remain" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+remain+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Remain somewhere (in a literal physical sense, or abstract)

Remain doing something

Remain with someone / something

I remain utterly mystified as why people celebrate rich businessmen travelling into outer space while there's so many problems on Earth we could be fixing.

She remained stationary in her car because it had broken down.

We'll have to remain in our seats when the meeting finishes because the boss wants to talk to us about working on the weekend.

Noun: Remainder

A greedy man saw another partygoer with a ceramic plate in one hand and a piece of cake in the other. He approached the partygoer and asked, "Can I have the remainder?" referring to the last, uneaten bit of cake sitting on the plate.

"Um," the partygoer said, looking confused. "Sure." He handed the plate over and the greedy man snatched it, grabbed the cake and shoved it abruptly into his mouth. Upon finishing, he let out a massive burp, threw the entire plate in the trash, then walked to a table being restocked with desserts.

Remember

1. have in or be able to bring to one's mind an awareness of (someone or something from the past).
2. do something that one has undertaken to do or that is necessary or advisable.

"remember" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+remember+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Remember something / someone

I can't remember when I was a baby. My first memories start around the age of 3 or 4.

When she saw the opening scenes of the movie, she remembered she'd already seen it, years prior.

He's lost the girl's phone number and he's having a difficult time remembering it.

Remind

1. cause (someone) to remember someone or something.
2. cause (someone) to fulfil an obligation or to take note of something.

"remind" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+remind+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Remind someone of something To get / be reminded

I don't need to be reminded of the importance of exercise and good sleep.

He knew he would forget what time the movie started, so he asked his friend to remind him.

She's reminded of her hometown every time someone mentions kebabs, because her hometown is famous for having multiple kebab shops.

Noun: Reminder

I'll probably forget that there's a boxing match on next month on the 14th, so can you please give me a reminder on the 13th?

Remove

1. take (something) away or off from the position occupied.
2. abolish or get rid of.

"remove" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+remve+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Remove something / someone

I should remove the shrubs from the bin with the red lid, because my local council told me weeds, grass, and shrubs belong in the bin with a green lid.

He removed the bottlecap so he could have a drink.

She'll remove the bandage when the wound is healed.

Noun: Removal

My friend had too many drinks and started abusing the customers and staff at the nightclub, so I said to him, "I'm not staying here. It's embarrassing watching you get drunk and start fights. If you continue this behaviour, you'll get beat up and kicked out, and I don't want to witness your removal from **yet another** club."

Repair

1. restore (something damaged, faulty, or worn) to a good condition.

“repair” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+repair+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Repair something (real or abstract)

I wish I was more competent doing **DIY** jobs around the house – I’d get a lot of satisfaction from being able to repair things in my home.

He was confused as to why the television wasn’t working, because he had recently repaired it.

We’ll repair the faulty toaster so we can have toast for breakfast.

Noun: Reparation

The delinquent adolescent was forced to apologise to the storeowner and make a financial reparation for the item he broke earlier in the week.

Repeat

1. say again something one has already said.
2. do (something) again or more than once.

“repeat” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+repeat+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Repeat something (like speech or behaviour)

It’s annoying to have to repeat myself to people who don’t pay attention to important details.

She had to repeat what she said because nobody heard her the first time.

He’ll have to repeat Year 7 because he’s struggling to learn at the same pace as the other students in his class.

Noun: Repetition

The beat in the song didn’t bother the man, but he was annoyed by the repetition of the boring lyrics. He felt the songwriter lacked creativity.

Replace

1. take the place of.
2. put (something) back in a previous place or position.

“replace” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+replace+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Replace someone / something

I often reread things I’ve written, and replace some words during the editing process.

She was made redundant at the factory because robots were hired to do her job more efficiently and effectively.

He’ll replace the vase he broke.

Noun: Replacement

The woman was visibly distressed upon hearing the news that her car wouldn’t be fixed for at least a week, because she needed transportation to get to and from work to pay her bills. Luckily, her friend had a spare car and gave it to her as a temporary replacement.

Reply

1. say something in response to something someone has said.

“reply” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+reply+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Reply to someone / something

I must remember to reply to a couple of my friends who sent me text messages yesterday.

He replied to the email he'd received from his lawyer.

They'll reply to the candidate to let him know his job interview has been unsuccessful.

Noun: Reply

I'm feeling anxious about my chances of getting a job I interviewed for; I was told I'd hear back from their hiring department yesterday, but I still haven't got a reply.

Report

1. give a spoken or written account of something that one has observed, heard, done, or investigated.
2. present oneself formally as having arrived at a particular place or as ready to do something.

"report" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+report+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Report someone / something

Report to someone

Report for duty (idiom) (to show up for work)

I don't like new laws that reward people for reporting citizens for suspicious behaviour. Firstly, I think the definition of "suspicious" can be quite subjective, and secondly, I think the government creates those laws to justify getting access to our personal information.

He saw a man hit a woman and he reported it to the police.

She'll investigate what had happened and report the facts to the people who needed to know.

Noun: Report

We won't know what's in the report until the police finish their investigation.

Reproduce

1. produce a copy of.
2. (of an organism) produce offspring by a sexual or asexual process.

“reproduce” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+reproduce+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Reproduce something

I wonder if people decide to reproduce because it's a biological imperative, or if they feel pressured by their society.

He was annoyed that he lost his essay, but with some effort he was able to reproduce the strongest points of his argument, and he did pass the course with a good grade.

The producers feel their film didn't make enough money because it cast the wrong actors, so they're going to reproduce it with different performers.

Noun: Reproduction

We won't know if something has been successfully copied until the end of the final stage of reproduction.

Request

1. politely or formally ask for.

“request” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+request+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Request that someone do something

Request someone / something

I sometimes request my favourite song when I'm at a small music venue.

He spoke to the airline and requested a vegetarian dinner for the long flight to Europe.

The boss requested that all her employees arrive to work on time, and said she didn't want to hear any excuses for being late.

Noun: Request

The concierge asked if I had any requests. "Yes," I said. "Could I please have a couple of extra towels and a bottle of champagne sent to my room?"

"Certainly, Sir," he replied.

Rescue

1. save (someone) from a dangerous or difficult situation.

"rescue" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rescue+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rescue someone / something

The firefighter rescued a kitten stuck in drainage pipe.

The girl had been lost in the woods for two days before being rescued by a search team.

Hopefully the struggling swimmer will be rescued by the surf lifesavers.

Noun: Rescue

The woman reached out to the rock-climber, grabbed his wrist, and pulled him up over the cliff edge to safety. It was the most impressive rescue I've ever seen.

Retire

1. leave one's job and cease to work, typically on reaching the normal age for leaving service.
2. withdraw to or from a particular place.

“retire” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+retire+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Retire (typically from a job)

I hope I can retire at a young age.

The man announced he would be retiring on his 65th birthday.

The woman will have to retire from the sport after suffering a career-ending injury.

Noun: Retirement

The prospect of an early retirement frightened the man because he needed some way to make money, but he also knew he hated his job and would struggle to find new employment if he left. Fortunately his company offered a generous redundancy package which allowed him to retire without having to worry about his finances.

Return

1. come or go back to a place or person.
2. give, put, or send (something) back to a place or person.

“return” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+return+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Return to someone / some place

Return from some place

Return something

I'd love to return to South America someday.

The soldier returned from the war and greeted his family at the airport.

The letter will need to be returned because it went to the wrong address.

Noun: Return

His return was celebrated, because he'd been gone for so long and his friends and family were not expecting to see him for many more months.

Rhyme

1. (of a word, syllable, or line) have or end with a sound that corresponds to another.

"rhyme" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rhyme+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rhyme

I used to think good poems needed to rhyme, but now I appreciate all styles of poetry.

She was a great rapper; her lyrics consistently rhymed, and her beats always made people feel positive.

Children often read stories which rhyme to help them learn.

Noun: Rhythm

I usually need to drink a few beers before I get the courage to dance in front of people, but occasionally the rhythm of a song entices me to dance, regardless of how much I've had to drink.

Rinse

1. wash (something) with clean water to remove soap, detergent, dirt, or impurities.

"rinse" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rinse+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rinse something

Rinse out (phrasal verb) (to rinse)

I rinse out my takeaway coffee cup before throwing it in the recycling bin.

The dirty plates were rinsed before they were washed and dried.

She'll have to rinse the bottom of her dirty shoes before she enters the newly carpeted house.

Noun: Rinse

I'll take the clothes out and hang them to dry once the washing machine has finished its rinse.

Risk

1. expose (someone or something valued) to danger, harm, or loss.

"risk" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+risk+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Risk something

I don't see the point in risking your life to engage in extreme sports.

The woman risked losing her lifesavings on a stupid bet.

Her husband risks ending someone's life every time he drive's under the influence of alcohol.

Noun: Risk

A lot of people believe that holding a sporting tournament during a pandemic is not a smart decision; they say the prospect of enjoying the tournament is outweighed by the risk of an outbreak.

Rob

1. take property unlawfully from (a person or place) by force or threat of force.

“rob” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rob+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rob someone / something

I’ve been robbed 3 times in my life. It was unpleasant **to say the least**, but on each occasion I was relieved that I wasn’t physically harmed.

She was robbed by a man with a knife who demanded she give him all of her money.

The area is going to be known as an unsafe place for tourists because travellers to the area continue to be robbed.

Noun: Robbery

The news reporters announced that the gang of thugs stole \$3,000 from a liquor store. Several staff members were traumatized, explaining to police that the thieves were armed with rifles and hand guns during the daring armed robbery.

Rock (#1)

1. to (cause someone or something to) move backwards and forwards or from side to side in a regular way.

“rocked” Cambridge Dictionary.

<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/rocked> (03 October, 2021)

Rock someone or something

With my dog on my lap, I gently rock back and forth in my chair to help get him to sleep at night.

He rocked on his rocking chair on his front porch, while watching the stars twinkle in the night sky.

She'll try to soothe the crying baby by rocking with it on the sofa.

Rock (#2)

1. If an event rocks a group of people or society, it causes feelings of shock.

"rocked" Cambridge Dictionary.

<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/rocked> (03 October, 2021)

Rocked by someone / something

I was rocked by news of the passing of my friend's mother.

He was rocked by the revelation that his girlfriend had been seeing another man.

The community will be rocked when they hear that their Sheriff has been killed in a car accident.

Roll

1. move in a particular direction by turning over and over on an axis.
2. (of a vehicle) move or run on wheels.

"queue" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+queue+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Roll something or someone

I used to roll myself down a steep, grassy hill when I was a kid. It was fun.

The baker rolled the dough before placing it on a tray.

The race car is possibly going to clip another car and flip in the air, then roll end over end into the barriers.

Rot

1. (chiefly of animal or vegetable matter) decay or cause to decay by the action of bacteria and fungi; decompose.

“rot” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rot+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

To Rot

I watched the old fruit rot **before my very eyes**.

If fruit is not eaten after a certain time period, it will rot, but it can be used for composting.

They'll let the animal rot in the wild, where it will decompose and be subsumed in the soil.

Rub

1. apply firm pressure to the surface of (something), using a repeated back and forth motion.
2. (with reference to two things) move or cause to move to and fro against each other with a certain amount of friction.

“rub” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rub+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rub someone / something

Rub something in / over / out (phrasal verb) (to rub in a specific direction)

Rub out (phrasal verb) (to eliminate someone or something)

Rub someone the wrong way (phrasal verb) (to annoy someone)

I wish I could rub a lamp and have a genie appear.

She rubbed the ointment over the affected area.

He hit his head on the door frame, then rubbed his head, hoping it would ease the pain.

"He really rubs me the wrong way," the worker told his colleague, complaining about their boss. "He's always asking me to work on the weekend."

The footballer will be rubbed out of the next 3 matches for abusing the umpire in last week's game.

Noun: Rub

My dog likes it when I give his belly a little rub.

Ruin

1. reduce (a building or place) to a state of decay, collapse, or disintegration.

"ruin" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+ruin+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Ruin something

The woman refuses to pay the landscaping company because the workers ruined her garden.

His pants were ruined when he spilt wine on them.

We'll probably ruin the chance for future generations to be healthy if we don't fix some of the problems that exist today.

Noun: Ruins

The fire destroyed the Cathedral and left only ash beneath the ruins.

Rule

1. exercise ultimate power or authority over (an area and its people).
2. pronounce authoritatively and legally to be the case.

“rule” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rule+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rule (on a decision)

Rule (over someone, some group, or some land)

The tribunal ruled that the player had recklessly infringed the rules and needed to be punished.

The King ruled over many lands, and it would take a brave soul to question or undermine his authority.

Most countries are ruled by their elected politicians.

Noun: Rule

The rules of a game dictate how it can and cannot be played. If someone can't play by the rules, they may be disqualified, or the game may have to be abandoned.

Rush

1. move with urgent haste.
2. dash towards (someone or something) in an attempt to attack or capture.

“rush” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+rush+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

Rush

Rush into something (like making a decision, or into an actual, physical place) (**phrasal verb**) (to hastily act or proceed to some place)

Rush out (phrasal verb) (to hastily leave, typically an indoor setting)

I had to rush through heavy traffic to get to my appointment on time.

He rushed through his exam because he didn't know the subject well, and didn't care what grade he'd get.

They'll have to rush to the hospital if they don't want their pregnant friend to give birth in the back of their car.

Noun: Rush

Everyone was in a rush to buy the popular product when it was on sale.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

don't mind

'Don't mind' is used as a way to diminish the concerns of an individual who thinks we might appreciate or require an explanation or apology. It's a way of telling them they need not worry. We use it to let others know that something doesn't bother us, or that we recognise that no offence or ill-will was intended on their behalf. It can also be used to inform someone not to be concerned with the seemingly irrational or distracting behaviour of another specific person or group.

Don't mind the bad language you can hear coming from the other room. My husband's just watching the cricket and he's very passionate about it.

"I'm sorry about my child. I can't get him to stop crying."

"There's no need to apologise – I don't mind. I know it must be worse for you than it is for me."

"I'm sorry that we don't have any hot water in the rooms this evening," the hotel manager said.

"I don't mind," replied the guest. "I prefer cold showers anyway."

The pilot apologised for having to divert the plane due to a storm. The passengers didn't mind. They were happy to take the safest route, even if it meant arriving a bit later than expected.

it's been ages

We say 'it's been ages' to refer to the relatively long span of time that has passed since we last engaged in a particular activity. It can be used in different contexts, be it a historical one that refers to the passing of many centuries, or in a very casual way with reference to friends or acquaintances.

It's been ages since I've seen her. Or, It's been ages since we've seen each other.

He really wanted a break from work because it had been ages since his last holiday.

I want to see my brother. He lives on the other side of the country, and it's been ages since we've seen each other.

She wasn't surprised that she'd developed a toothache, because it had been ages since she'd been to the dentist.

Even though I look after myself, don't watch tv at night, own a comfortable bed, and do my best to wind down at the end of the day, it's been ages since I last got a good night's sleep. I don't know what the problem is.

not interested in him

If someone is 'not interested in' another person it means they do not have enough desire to pursue that person romantically. It's similar to saying 'I'm not attracted to him/her.' It can be used in a way that shows one's level of disinterest or irritation is such that they wish not to have any of their time occupied by the specified individual. "I'm not interested in hearing about him," for example. However, 'I'm not interested in him/her' is almost always used in a romantic sense.

She's not going to agree to a date, because she's not interested in him.

"You should go on a date with my friend. She's gorgeous and smart. The only downside is she hates dogs."

"No, thanks."

"Why not?"

"Your friend might be attractive and intelligent, but I'm not interested in someone who doesn't like animals."

The firm was not interested in hiring the candidate, because the candidate had recently been involved in a scandal, and it would damage the firm's reputation to be associated with the individual.

Thanks to many different questions that filter out incompatibilities, dating websites can assist individuals in finding a person they're more likely to be interested in.

yet another

We say 'yet another' when something that has happened (often frequently enough to establish an already unlikely pattern) has occurred once again. We may be talking about a pattern or occurrence that we may have had reason to believe had ceased, and that's when its reoccurrence tends to validate the use of this word combination.

I thought I found a useful product advertised on the internet, but when I clicked the link I realised it was yet another scam with a clickbait title.

"Why are you filling our home with yet another useless piece of junk," the man asked his housemate. "We have plenty of beanbags. We don't need any more!"

With so much inequality in the world, I think the last thing we need is yet another billionaire making plans for us to live on another planet.

The oil company – known for their devastating treatment of the environment – destroyed yet another eco-system when they spilled toxic waste into rivers and wetlands.

DIY

'DIY' is an acronym for Do It Yourself, often seen with reference to tasks that you can do at home by yourself. It's not applicable to routine chores like washing the dishes, but rather applies to fixing a dishwasher that happens to be broken.

You don't need to hire a professional for that job, you can just do it yourself.

I like doing DIY around the house.

I think the popularity of places like IKEA and Bunnings, and home renovation shows on tv has helped inspire people to think of creative, DIY projects that improve the aesthetic and price of their home.

Her grandfather never earned any money as a professional tradesman, but he was quite the handyman around the house. He was always doing some DIY project on the weekends.

to say the least

'To say the least' is to refer to a particular description as containing the minimum amount in order to communicate the essential point, which helps emphasise it. It's useful, therefore, for cases where people only need the bare minimum of details to have an appreciation for what needs to be conveyed. If you say 'To say the least,' you're saying 'what's been said is sufficient' (and to add more would be extraneous). We may also

see it in situations where the speaker has a reason or a wish not to reveal all the specific details.

It wasn't his best effort, to say the least. = It was far from his best effort.

It was a dominant performance, to say the least. = It was a very dominant performance.

"Do you like cars?" he asked the rich man.

"To say the least. I'm a massive car enthusiast, and own over 300 classic cars."

The service in this restaurant is slow, to say the least. = The service in the restaurant is extremely slow.

before my very eyes

'Before my very eyes' conveys a level of surprise – often to the point of astonishment – that something, perhaps quite rare, was witnessed by the speaker himself or herself. It's therefore often in reference to something that might be spoken about in other circles or talked about in the news, or up until that point was not able to be confirmed and was simply conjecture, but on this particular occasion I could actually see it take place.

I went hiking yesterday, and when I curled around a small path I saw a mountain lion right before my very eyes. It was crouching about 10 metres in front of me.

"I can't see it."

"What do you mean you can't see it? It's before your very eyes."

At first, we heard a loud sound from above, and when we all looked up we saw an alien spacecraft right before our very eyes.

She hadn't seen her father in over 15 years, but now he was standing in the hotel foyer right before her very eyes.

S



Sack

1. dismiss from employment.

“sack” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sack+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Sack someone

I've never been sacked, but I probably would've been sacked if my boss found out I broke into his office to use his private bathroom.

She was sacked from her job for continually being late.

I'm going to have to sack him because he does not work hard, and when I ask him to do a task he always argues.

Noun: Sacking

I accidentally knocked over a pallet while operating a forklift and I was fired from my job as a result. Unfortunately my sacking means it'll be harder for me to impress another employer in my search for a new job.

Sail

1. travel in a boat with sails, especially as a sport or recreation.
2. move smoothly and rapidly or in a stately or confident manner.

“sail” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sail+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Sail somewhere

Sail something (that can be sailed, like a yacht)

I sailed in Vancouver, Canada. It was an interesting experience, but the rocking of the boat caused me to feel seasick.

They sailed to Jamaica in their yacht.

He'll raise the mast and sail to his destination.

Noun: Sail

That yacht has a huge sail.

Satisfy

1. meet the expectations, needs, or desires of (someone).
2. provide (someone) with adequate or convincing information or proof about something.

"satisfy" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+satisfy+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Satisfy someone (including oneself)

Be satisfied by something

I'm satisfied whenever I eat a good, homecooked meal.

The teacher was satisfied that her student had done the necessary homework and was ready for the test.

The dog will be satisfied after going for a walk.

Noun: Satisfaction

Travelling around the world and meeting new people gives me a lot of satisfaction.

Save

1. keep safe or rescue (someone or something) from harm or danger.
2. keep and store up (something, especially money) for future use.

"save" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+save+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Save someone / something

I save money for things I want to buy, but then I end up spending money on things I don't need.

He was able to afford a Mercedes because he saved a lot of money.

The firefighters are going to try and save the old lady from the burning building.

Scatter

1. throw in various random directions.
2. (of a group of people or animals) separate and move off quickly in different directions.

"scatter" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scatter+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scatter something

I accidentally scatter the items on my desk while I'm working, then I forget which position I had them.

He scattered the puzzle pieces across the table and began to assemble the puzzle.

It'll take her a long time to clean her room because she has a lot of clothes scattered across the floor.

Scold

1. remonstrate with or rebuke (someone) angrily.

"scold" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scold+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scold someone

I don't like to scold my friends – or anyone **for that matter** – but if they deserve, it I'll do it. You've got to be cruel to be kind.

The mother scolded her son for drawing on the living room walls.

His dad is going to scold him for driving the car without permission.

Scorch

1. burn the surface of (something) with flame or heat.

“scorch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scorch+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scorch someone (literally or figuratively)

Scorch something

I scorched my brother for destroying my cricket bat. **That is to say**, I berated him and lectured him for ruining something that belonged to me.

She didn't wear any sunscreen and got scorched by the sun as a result.

The land has been scorched after several years of drought.

Scrape

1. drag or pull a hard or sharp implement across (a surface or object) so as to remove dirt or other matter.
2. rub or cause to rub by accident against a rough or hard surface, causing damage or injury.

“scrape” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scrape+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scrape something

I scrape all the dirt off the bottom of my football boots after playing football on a muddy oval.

She scraped the black board with her fingernails and caused a shrieking sound.

He was angry because somebody had scraped the side of his brand new car.

Scratch

1. score or mark the surface of (something) with a sharp or pointed object.
2. cancel or strike out (writing) with a pen or pencil.

“scratch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scratch+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scratch someone / something

It can be a bit painful when a protruding nail scratches or penetrates my skin.

She scratched her skin because it was very itchy.

He didn't like holding the cat, because it would often use it's claws to scratch him.

Noun: Scratch

I couldn't think of a good excuse to tell my boss why I wouldn't be coming in to work. He asked me what was wrong. It's a question I should've been prepared for, and yet all I could do was freeze, then say, "I got a bad scratch on my stomach." It was embarrassing, but luckily my boss left the topic and told me to come in to work as soon as I'm healthy to do so.

Scream

1. give a long, loud, piercing cry or cries expressing extreme emotion or pain.
2. make a loud, high-pitched sound.

“scream” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scream+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scream

Scream at someone for some reason

People think others only scream when afraid, but it’s possible to scream with excitement too. How else do you explain the expression: “I scream, you scream, we all scream for ice cream!”?

Why is it that women (generally speaking) are able to scream so much louder than men?

She’ll scream if she sees the strange man outside her house, late at night.

Noun: Scream

The screams emanating from the rollercoaster suggested it was a fun and scary ride.

Screw

1. fasten or tighten with a screw or screws.

“screw” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+screw+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Screw something

Screw something somewhere

I screw screws into wood when woodworking projects require it.

He screwed the wood together using a screwdriver, which he turned in a clockwise direction.

The mechanic will need to screw a carbon fibre panel over part of the motorcycle.

Scribble

1. write or draw (something) carelessly or hurriedly.

“scribble” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scribble+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scribble something

I make notes while I’m teaching, but sometimes I write so fast it looks like I’m scribbling.

He took a pencil and scribbled something on a piece of paper.

The baby will scribble when he tries to paint because he lacks the coordination to draw identifiable objects.

Scrub

1. rub (someone or something) hard so as to clean them, typically with a brush and water.

“scrub” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+scrub+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Scrub something

“I’m not looking forward to scrubbing chewing gum off the desks,” one student said to the other, as they sat in detention.

She scrubbed the grime off the kitchen bench.

He'll get on his hands and knees and scrub the kitchen floor with a coarse sponge.

Seal

1. fasten or close securely.
2. apply a non-porous coating to (a surface) to make it impervious.

"seal" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+seal+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Seal something

The airline won't seal the life preservers under the seats, because people need to access them quickly in an emergency.

She put the letter in the envelope, sealed the envelope, placed a postage stamp on it, then put it in the big red post-box.

He sealed the envelope so that none of the documents would fall out.

Noun: Seal

You have to peel off a protective seal before using some medications.

Search

1. try to find something by looking or otherwise seeking carefully and thoroughly.

"search" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+search+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Search something Search for something

I search for meaning in my life, but I don't expect eternal happiness to come if I find it.

He lost his keys and searched for them for 3 hours before finally finding them.

The rescue team searched for the missing girl.

Noun: The search was likely to continue past midnight.

Separate

1. cause to move or be apart.
2. divide into constituent or distinct elements.

"separate" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+separate+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Separate someone / something

I separate my peas and mashed potatoes when I have them for dinner.

The puppies were separated when they were bought by their new **respective** owners.

The couple are having a lot of arguments. It won't be surprising if they decide to separate.

Noun: Separate

The couple disagreed on where they should go for lunch, so they decided to go to separate restaurants, then meet up for dinner.

Serve

1. perform duties or services for (another person or an organization).
2. present (food or drink) to someone.

“serve” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+serve+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Serve someone something
Serve something to someone

I don't know exactly what type of food zookeepers serve to the zoo animals.

She ate at a fancy restaurant and was served by an Italian waitress.

The dinner party hosts will serve lobster to their guests.

Noun: Server

The server served the guests.

Settle

1. resolve or reach an agreement about (an argument or problem).
2. pay (a debt or account).

“settle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+settle+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Settle something (that requires a resolution)

Settle into something (physical or abstract) (**phrasal verb**) (to adapt and become comfortable)

I settle in my seat in the cinema, then find a place to put my frozen coke and popcorn.

The two friends settled an argument about the age of the universe by finding the answer on Google.

Our neighbour and his gardener are going to have to settle their dispute in court.

Noun: Settlement (x2)

1. We live in a settlement in the southeast of Victoria, Australia.
2. The neighbour and his gardener reached a settlement – the neighbour agreed to pay the gardener a large sum of money. In exchange for the payment, the gardener agreed to keep silent about the details of their conflict.

Shade

1. screen from direct light.
2. darken or colour (an illustration or diagram) with parallel pencil lines or a block of colour.

“shade” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+shade+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Shade something

I shade my face with a big hat when I’m outside on sunny days.

The courtyard was well shaded by the big trees surrounding it.

The artist is shading a drawing with a piece of charcoal.

Noun: Shade

I don’t worry about not having suntan lotion if I can stay under a tree providing a lot of shade.

Share

1. have a portion of (something) with another or others.

“share” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+share+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Share something with someone

I share my car with my brother because he needs to get to work, and he doesn't have a car of his own.

The divorced parents shared custody of their children.

The little girl will share her cookie with her friend.

Noun: Share

I've paid my share of the bill. You need to pay your share now.

Shave

1. (of a man) cut the hair off the face with a razor.
2. cut (a thin slice or slices) from the surface of something.

"shave" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+shave+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Shave something

I shave using an electric shaver.

The man shaved his beard in an attempt to make a good first impression at his job interview.

The woman's legs are going to be very smooth after she shaves and moisturizes them.

Noun: Shave

I need to have a shave to look good for a job interview tomorrow.

Shelter

1. protect or shield from something harmful, especially bad weather.

“shelter” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+shelter+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Shelter someone or something

I am very grateful to have healthy food to eat, and a home that shelters me from the cold wind and rain.

He’s lucky to be sheltered with friends and family as the hurricane rips through their town.

The dogs are going to be sheltered at the rescue centre until someone comes to adopt them.

Noun: Shelter

The homeless man didn't ask for much, he just wanted some food and shelter.

Shiver

1. shake slightly and uncontrollably as a result of being cold, frightened, or excited.

“shiver” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+shiver+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To shiver (typically in response to a physical or psychological experience)

I shiver whenever I hear dark and eerie music, because it reminds me of a scary film I saw as a child.

Her body shivered because she was very cold.

His heater isn’t working. He’s probably not going to shake uncontrollably, but he might start shivering when the temperature dips below 5 degrees Celsius.

Shock

1. cause (someone) to feel surprised and upset.
2. affect with physiological shock, or with an electric shock.

“shock” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+shock+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Shock someone

Be shocked by someone or something

I get a shock whenever I see people being cruel to animals.

He was shocked to learn that computers could one day be more powerful than humans.

His parents are going to be shocked when they find out he’s been arrested for possessing drugs.

Noun: Shock

She received a shock when she put her hand on the electric wire.

Shop

1. visit one or more shops or websites to buy goods.

“shop” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+shop+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Shop for something / someone

I shop for new clothes only 2 or 3 times a year.

He shopped at the grocery store for more than an hour because he had a long list of items he needed to buy.

She'll enjoy going to the fancy area of the city to shop for expensive clothes.

Noun: Shop

There are several different shops inside a big shopping mall.

Shrug

1. raise (one's shoulders) slightly and momentarily to express doubt, ignorance, or indifference.

"shrug" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+shrug+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Shrug (to express an emotion – typically confusion, frustration or indifference).

I wish I was excited to learn about history, but when people ask me if I'd like to hear historical stories, I usually just shrug to signal my lack of interest.

He asked her if she wanted to go to a sports bar, and she shrugged her shoulders in a way that suggested she was indifferent.

The sports star didn't want to push or punch his clamouring and adoring fans when they grabbed him, so he did his best to shrug them off while heading back to the changerooms.

Noun: Shrug

My brother asked me what I thought of his jacket. I didn't really have an opinion on it, so I just gave a shrug.

Sigh

1. emit a long, deep audible breath expressing sadness, relief, tiredness, or similar.

"sigh" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sigh+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Sigh (typically to express an emotion like sadness or disappointment)

I sigh whenever I'm reminded of the death of my favourite comedian.

He sighed when his girlfriend told him she would not be able to go with him to the concert.

The students are going to sigh when their teacher gives them homework to do over the weekend.

Sign

1. write one's name on (a letter, card, document, etc.) to identify oneself as the writer or sender.
2. use gestures to convey information or instructions.

"sign" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sign+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Sign (typically with hand gestures to indicate something)

Sign (in writing, like a contract or signature)

I know there was a nightclub somewhere in Europe where deaf people sign to each other. People who aren't deaf dance to music on the 1st floor, while the deaf people communicate with each other on the 2nd floor.

The band signed the contract and agreed to make a new album.

If the movie star signs her name on a piece of paper for her adoring fans, her public image will be improved.

Noun: Sign

It's important to recognise and respect traffic signs while driving.

Signal

1. convey information or instructions by means of a gesture, action, or sound.

“signal” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+signal+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Signal something (as a way to communicate something)

My body language usually signals I’m irritated when I’m quite hungry.

He waved his arms to signal to an oncoming car; he wanted the driver to stop and help him.

She’ll have to stay in the classroom until the teacher signals that she’s free to leave.

Noun: Signal

It’s very important to pay attention to traffic signals when you’re driving.

Sin

1. commit a sin.

“sin” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sin+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To sin

I hope there’s no hell, because I’m sure I’ve sinned more than once in my life.

The man sinned. He stole a car, but then started to feel guilty about it. He went to church to confess what he’d done.

She’s quite comfortable with sinning in order to get what she wants, and **doesn’t seem too fussed** about the consequences either.

Noun: Sin

Most people are going to commit a few sins over the course of a lifetime.

Sip

1. drink (something) by taking small mouthfuls.

“sip” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sip+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Sip something (like a liquid)

I always sip my coffee and wait for it to cool down before taking large gulps.

She sipped the soup from her bowl, and her mother yelled at her for not using a spoon.

He sipped the shot glass to get an idea of how much alcohol it contained.

Noun: Sip

Her coffee was very hot, so she had to take small sips to avoid burning her tongue.

Ski

1. travel over snow on skis; take part in the sport or recreation of skiing.

“ski” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+ski+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To ski

I snowboard when there's enough snow on the mountains nearby my hometown, but I don't ski.

The skier was taken to the top of the snowy mountain before smoothly skiing back to the base of the mountain.

Snowboarders have one board, while skiers have one ski on each foot. Both glide over the snow.

Noun: Skis

"Did you bring your skis?" one friend asked the other.

"No, I didn't. I didn't realise there would be snow here. You should've told me!"

Skip

1. move along lightly, stepping from one foot to the other with a hop or bounce.
2. jump over a rope which is held at both ends by oneself or two other people and turned repeatedly over the head and under the feet, as a game or for exercise.

"skip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+skip+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To skip

People often skip when they're feeling happy.

The girls were so happy to finish school that they held each other's hands and skipped all the way home.

A lot of boxers skip with a rope to strengthen their legs and maintain good levels of fitness.

The power walkers who skipped will be disqualified for breaking the rules.

Slap

1. hit or strike with the palm of the hand or a flat object.
2. put or apply (something) somewhere quickly, carelessly, or forcefully.

“slap” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+slap+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Slap someone or something (typically as a punishment, or to get someone’s attention)

I don’t think I’ve ever slapped someone across the face.

The woman slapped her husband when she discovered he'd been flirting with another woman at work.

The father slapped the video game controller out of his son's hands and told him to go outside and get some fresh air.

Noun: Slap

He received a painful slap for being rude and disrespectful to his mother.

Slip

1. lose one's footing and slide unintentionally for a short distance.

“slip” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+slip+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Slip on / through / over something

I take care to not slip on the kitchen tiles, because I did that as a child and I know it can cause injury.

He slipped on the floor because it was covered in an invisible layer of soapy water.

She’s going to step on that banana peel and slip over.

Slow

1. reduce one's speed or the speed of a vehicle or process.

"slow" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+slow+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To slow

Slow down (phrasal verb) (to decrease speed)

I find it difficult to slow my thoughts when I'm scared or angry.

The traffic lights turned red and the cars slowed to a halt.

He's running too fast – he'll need to slow down to avoid falling over.

Smash

1. violently break (something) into pieces.
2. move so as to hit or collide with something with great force and impact.

"smash" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+smash+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Smash something

I sometimes smash my fists on the arm of my sofa when my football team plays poorly.

Inside a pub, a crazy, drunk man smashed his pint glass against the bar and threatened to cut people with it.

The driver lost control of his vehicle. It veered off the road and smashed into a tree.

Smell

1. perceive or detect the odour or scent of (something).
2. emit an odour or scent of a specified kind.

“smell” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+smell+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Smell something

I don't like to smell the dog's dinner before sitting down to eat my meal.

She took a deep breath and smelled the pleasing aroma of the rose.

He'll have to smell the dirty dishes while he's cleaning them, or put a peg over his nose to block the odour.

Noun: Smell

There are certain medical conditions that cause people to lose their sense of smell.

Smile

1. form one's features into a pleased, kind, or amused expression, typically with the corners of the mouth turned up and the front teeth exposed.

“smile” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+smile+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Smile

Smile at / for someone or something

I just smile when I hear something funny, whereas most people laugh.

The boy acted in the school play, and he smiled when he saw his parents sitting in the audience, waving.

She won't be able to stop smiling after we tell her she's won \$50,000.

Noun: Smile

Having great teeth **tends to be** a feature of people who have an attractive smile.

Smoke

1. emit smoke or visible vapour.
2. suck on the end of a lit cigarette, cigar, pipe, etc. so as to inhale and exhale the smoke produced by the burning tobacco into the mouth.

"smoke" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+smoke+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To smoke

Smoke something

I don't smoke cigarettes.

He smoked his cigarette outside because he wasn't allowed to smoke near the people eating their dinner.

She'll ignore her father's pleas to stop smoking marijuana, because it helps her calm down without diminishing her usual level of productivity.

Snatch

1. quickly seize (something) in a rude or eager way.

"snatch" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+snatch+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Snatch something

I don't like it when people snatch things out of my hands.

The thief snatched the old lady's handbag and ran away with it.

She'll most likely snatch the candy out of her son's hands, because he's not allowed to eat candy until he's finished eating his dinner.

Sneeze

1. make a sudden involuntary expulsion of air from the nose and mouth due to irritation of one's nostrils.

"sneeze" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sneeze+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To sneeze

I sneeze two or three times whenever I look at the sky.

The woman with allergies walked into a field filled with pollen and sneezed 10 times.

It's common to say "bless you" to someone after they sneeze.

Noun: Sneeze

He had the loudest sneeze in the village.

Sniff

1. draw up air audibly through the nose to detect a smell, to stop it running, or to express contempt.

"sniff" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sniff+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Sniff something

I **can't help but** sniff if I feel a slight tickle or irritation in my nose.

He sniffed the old, open milk carton and noticed the odour was very pungent.

She sniffed the air and it smelled of smoke, so she quickly ran out of the building in case there was a fire.

Snore

1. make a snorting or grunting sound while asleep.

"snore" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+snore+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To snore

I deny that I snore, but my last girlfriend told me I do snore a little bit.

Few people in the dormitory could sleep, because one man there snored very loudly.

"We'll have to leave this hostel if that old guy keeps snoring like this," one traveller told the other.

Snow

1. snow falls.

"snow" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+snow+meaning> (03 October, 2021)

To snow

Snow somewhere

Snow on someone / something

I want it to snow during Christmas.

The man could not reverse his car, because it had snowed for 3 days straight and his driveway was blocked as a result.

We'll go skiing if it snows on Mount Hotham this week.

Noun: Snow

Most kids love playing in the snow.

Soak

1. make or allow (something) to become thoroughly wet by immersing it in liquid.

"soak" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+soak+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Soak something (usually for the purpose of cleaning)

Some people soak their clothes in warm water to help release certain kinds of stains.

The man's clothes were too dirty to put straight into the washing machine, so he soaked them for a few hours beforehand.

The rain soaked the woman's jacket as she was walking home.

Noun: Soak

"We'll give your pants a good soak before hanging them out to dry," the mother told her daughter.

Soothe

1. gently calm (a person or their feelings).
2. reduce pain or discomfort in (a part of the body).
3. relieve or ease (pain).

“soothe” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+soothe+meaning> (04
October, 2021)

Soothe someone
Be soothed by someone or something

I am soothed by gentle, relaxing African music with string instruments.

She was soothed by the thought that she would see her family again soon.

The mother will soothe her crying baby with a lullaby.

Spare

1. give (something of which one has enough) to (someone).
2. refrain from killing, injuring, or distressing.

“spare” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+spare+meaning> (04
October, 2021)

Spare something (physical or abstract)

I am happy to spare some change so my father can buy the newspaper this afternoon.

He spared his efforts in order to have more energy later in the day.

She spared some chocolate for her husband, who appreciated her kindness.

Noun: Spare

“Don’t make the same mistake I did. I wasn’t prepared for a blown tire when I drove interstate. Make sure you’ve got a spare with you whenever you drive.”

Spark

1. emit sparks of fire or electricity.
2. ignite.

“spark” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+spark+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Spark something (physical or abstract)

I think the coach needs to spark the players into action.

His desire to wear a sweater was sparked by a cold breeze that swept through his room.

She’ll be sparked to advocate for climate change policies after watching the documentary on global warming.

Noun: Spark

The electrician was called to fix a spark that looked and sounded somewhat dangerous.

Sparkle

1. shine brightly with flashes of light.
2. be vivacious and witty.

“sparkle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sparkle+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To sparkle

The stars in the night sky shine and sparkle.

He had a friend who bought a precious stone. The stone sparkled if you held it under light at a specific angle.

If you tell me my eyes sparkle, I’ll take it as a compliment.

Noun: Sparkle

There's a sparkle in her eyes. Not literally, of course. I'm just transfixed by the beauty of her eyes.

Spell

1. write or name the letters that form (a word) in correct sequence.
2. be a sign or characteristic of.

"spell" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+spell+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Spell something

Spell something out (phrasal verb) (to explain something in such a way that anyone would be able to understand it)

My ability to spell English words is at an advanced level.

He always spelled difficult words correctly, which helped him win a few spelling competitions.

She'll advance to the next round of the competition if she can spell the word "vocabulary."

Spill

1. cause or allow (liquid) to flow over the edge of its container, especially unintentionally.

"spill" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+spill+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Spill something

I don't spill my coffee when I walk from my kitchen to my desk if I take care.

She poured too much milk into the glass and it spilled onto the floor.

He's going to bump into someone and spill his beer.

Noun: Spill

The workers were frustrated to learn they'd have to help clean up an oil spill, which none of them had caused.

Spoil

1. diminish or destroy the value or quality of.
2. harm the character of (someone, especially a child) by being too lenient or indulgent.

"spoil" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+spoil+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Spoil someone / something

I don't have kids, but if I did, I don't think I'd spoil them with gifts; maybe they'd start expecting gifts all the time.

She told her sister what presents she was getting for Christmas, and that knowledge spoiled the surprise.

The little boy will be rude and selfish if his rich parents continue to spoil him with gifts every day; he'll never learn the value of hard work.

Noun: Spoils

To the victor go the spoils. (A saying in English, meaning the person who wins a dispute is rewarded with the satisfaction of the win, plus whatever else he or she may have been fighting for).

Spot

1. see, notice, or recognize (someone or something) that is difficult to detect or that one is searching for.
2. mark or become marked with spots.

“spot” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+spot+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Spot something / someone

I hope to spot some wild animals on an African safari.

The woman asked the tour guide to shine a light on any tree with a koala. **Little did she know**, it’s not easy for anyone (tour guides included) to spot koalas in trees.

The boy spotted a twenty dollar note on the ground. He quickly grabbed it and put it in his pocket.

She’ll return to where she’s walked and see if she can spot the \$20 that fell out of her purse.

Noun: Spot

A cheetah’s fur is covered in multiple black spots.

Spray

1. apply (liquid) to someone or something in the form of tiny drops.

“spray” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+spray+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Spray someone / something

I spray my car with water when it’s covered in dust from gravel roads.

The man sprayed the can of deodorant under his arms.

The farmer sprayed her crops with the fertiliser.

Noun: Spray

What kind of spray is safe enough to mask bad odours, but not so toxic as to harm one's health?

Sprout

1. (of a plant) put out shoots.

"sprout" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+sprout+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To sprout

I see six carrots sprouting in my front yard.

The seeds sprouted quickly because the garden was exposed to the perfect amount of water and sunlight.

We're going to see the tomatoes and zucchinis sprout in the garden soon.

Noun: Sprouts

The little green sprouts will grow if we look after them.

Squash

1. crush or squeeze (something) with force so that it becomes flat, soft, or out of shape.
2. suppress or subdue (a feeling or action).

"squash" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+squash+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Squash something / someone

I don't want to squash anyone, nor do I want to be squashed.

The woman squashed the oranges to extract the juice.

If you're not careful when storing heavy objects in high places, something could fall and squash an innocent passer-by.

Squeak

1. make a high-pitched sound or cry.

"squeak" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+squeak+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To squeak

I have shoes that squeak when I walk. I need to get rid of them.

The rubber duck toy squeaked when the toddler squeezed it.

The door will squeak when it's opened and closed because the hinges are old and rusty.

Squeal

1. make a squeal.

"squeal" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+squeal+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To squeal

I don't squeal when I watch a horror movie, but I know many people who do.

The little girl shrieked and squealed when the dog barked at her.

The girls will undoubtedly squeal with delight when they're told they can have a sleepover.

Squeeze

1. firmly press (something soft or yielding), typically with one's fingers.
2. manage to get into or through a narrow or restricted space.

"squeeze" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+squeeze+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Squeeze something

After washing dishes, I squeeze the sponge in order to drain it of excess water and allow it to dry.

He squeezed the tube of toothpaste to make the toothpaste come out.

The girl will attend a ceramic workshop. She might have to squeeze some clay in order to mould and shape the clay into the design she wants.

Stain

1. mark or discolour with something that is not easily removed.
2. colour (a material or object) by applying a penetrative dye or chemical.

"stain" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stain+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stain something (physical or abstract)

I try not to stain my clothes when I eat.

She spilled the red wine in the living room and stained the carpet.

His reputation is going to be stained after the media reports this latest controversy.

Noun: Stain

He has a stain on his jumper and he has no idea how it got there.

Stamp

1. bring down (one's foot) heavily on the ground or on something on the ground.
2. impress a pattern or mark on (a surface, object, or document) using an engraved or inked block or die.

"stamp" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stamp+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stamp something

I make sure the waitress stamps my coupon every time I get a coffee at the local café. If I get 10 stamps on the coupon I'll receive a free coffee.

The librarian stamped the inside cover of the book. The stamp showed the date the book needed to be returned to the library.

He's going to be upset when he realises his postcard wasn't stamped, because he knows the postcard won't be sent without the stamp.

Noun: Stamp

The documents needed an official stamp before they could be processed.

Stare

1. look fixedly or vacantly at someone or something with one's eyes wide open.

“stare” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stare+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stare at someone / something

Stare someone down (phrasal verb) (to stare at someone in an intimidating way, causing them to retreat)

I like to stare at beautiful sunsets.

The attractive woman felt uncomfortable because an old man had been staring at her for a long time.

The boy’s going to stare at his feet and feel embarrassed. He’ll try to hide from his disappointed father.

We wanted to confront the grumpy old man and tell him his behaviour offends us, but he was quite intimidating; he stared us down for 20 seconds and we carefully retreated.

Start

1. begin or be reckoned from a particular point in time or space.
2. (of event or process) happen or come into being.

“start” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+start+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Start something

Start doing something

I hate it when I sit down to focus on my emails and the phone starts ringing.

She started a new business in July.

He’ll be more effective when he starts to understand how to play the game.

Noun: Start

If they don't get a good start, they'll struggle to finish the project on time.

Stay

1. remain in the same place.
2. remain in a specified state or position.

"stay" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stay+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stay somewhere

Stay put (phrasal verb) (to remain in the same place)

I can't stay outside in the heat for very long, especially without shade or sunscreen.

The couple went on holiday and stayed in a fancy hotel.

The dog will stay put, just as its owner requested, because it is a loyal and obedient pet.

Steer

1. guide or control the movement of (a vehicle, vessel, or aircraft), for example by turning a wheel or operating a rudder.

"steer" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+steer+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Steer something / someone (literally or figuratively)

"Will you steer me in the right direction?" the student asked the instructor, fearing he might make a small mistake that would lead to another, bigger mistake .

He steered the car around the bend.

She'll steer the car around the corner and into the driveway.

Noun: Steering wheel

Use your knowledge of the position of the hour and minute hands of a clock at 10 minutes to 2 o'clock, then grip the steering wheel with your hands in those positions. This is where your hands should normally be when driving a car safely, at 10 and 2.

Step

1. lift and set down one's foot or one foot after the other in order to walk somewhere or move to a new position.

"step" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+step+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Step on something

Step (+ other prepositions of place) something or someone

Step in (phrasal verb) (become involved in a situation, often difficult, out of obligation or necessity)

Step up (phrasal verb) (2 meanings: 1. to literally climb upwards. 2. to apply oneself, particularly in a difficult situation that requires some courage)

I usually step over a puddle and onto a patch of grass when I go for my daily walk.

She stepped on something hard and sharp and it pierced her foot.

We don't have any politicians who are willing to step up and accept responsibility for the failures of their policies.

He'll curse when he realises he's stepped in a pile of dog faeces.

Noun: Step

I fear it will be more difficult for me to climb the steps of my favourite mountain trail when I'm older.

Stir

1. move a spoon or other implement round in (a liquid or other substance) in order to mix it thoroughly.
2. move or cause to move slightly.

"stir" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stir+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stir something

I usually stir the vegetables, sauces and noodles for a total of 3 minutes when I cook an Asian stir-fry.

The baker stirred the cake mix before pouring it into the tray.

Her emotions will stir when she hears her mentor deliver an inspirational speech.

Noun: Stir

His controversial statements caused a big stir in the department. Many faculty members wanted him to resign.

Stitch

1. make, mend, or join (something) with stitches.

"stitch" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stitch+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stitch something

I admire the Vietnamese women who would stitch material together all day, in the big market in downtown Danang.

The dressmaker stitched the dress and it was no longer frayed.

The doctor will stitch the patient's open wound.

Noun: Stitches

The doctor told the patient that a small scar may be visible when the stitches are taken out.

Stop

1. (of an event, action, or process) come to an end; cease to happen.
2. cause (an action, process, or event) to come to an end.

“stop” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stop+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stop someone / something

I tend to lose weight with more ease whenever I stop consuming alcohol and cake.

He stopped at the traffic lights because the light had turned red.

It's late at night, so I'll stop watching tv and go to bed.

Noun: Stop

We as a society need to put a stop to government policies that undermine our privacy and limit our freedoms.

Store

1. keep or accumulate (something) for future use.

“store” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+store+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Store something somewhere

I believe a baker stores ingredients like flour and the sugar in a cupboard.

The warehouse stored a lot of products that could only be retrieved with the help of a forklift.

Small bags can be stored in the overhead compartments on planes.

Noun: Store

A convenience store is usually small, but big enough to sell most essential items. The number of convenient stores in a metropolitan area is typically very large, meaning you get the convenience of not having to travel far to find the items you need.

Strap

1. fasten or secure in a specified place or position with a strap.
2. beat (someone) with a strip of leather.

"strap" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+strap+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Strap something or someone

When I worked as a paperboy I put newspapers in a crate, and then strapped the crate to my bike.

He strapped his child into the back seat of the car and drove to the school.

The delivery personnel will strap the items securely inside the back of the truck.

Noun: Strap

The moving company used a number of different straps to secure different bits of furniture. One such strap was elastic. The movers wrapped the elastic strap around a bookshelf, then hooked it the side of a trailer to keep the bookshelf in place. Unfortunately the hook came loose while the movers were driving, and the strap flung wildly to the other side

of the trailer. The movers didn't notice the bookshelf slide out of the trailer and smash onto the road.

Strengthen

1. make or become stronger.

"strengthen" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+strengthen+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Strengthen someone / something (real or abstract)

I strengthen my biceps whenever I do chin-ups. I like to believe that's what's happening, **anyway**.

The athlete strengthened his muscles so he could compete to a high standard.

Her latest failure only strengthened her resolve to be better and succeed next time.

Noun: Strength

The hikers are confident they have enough strength and stamina to ascend the mountain.

Stretch

1. (of something soft or elastic) be made or be capable of being made longer or wider without tearing or breaking.
2. straighten or extend one's body or a part of one's body to its full length, typically so as to tighten one's muscles or in order to reach something.

"stretch" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stretch+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stretch something

I sometimes do resistance training – I use different muscles to stretch a fitness band to improve muscle strength and tone.

His socks were always falling down because they'd been stretched so many times that they'd lost elasticity.

"The straps won't stretch far enough to tie the refrigerator in place," one mover said to the other.

Noun: Stretch

I make sure I do a number of different stretches before I go for a run, in order to avoid injury.

Strip

1. remove all coverings from.
2. leave bare of accessories or fittings.

"strip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+strip+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Strip something or someone

Strip someone of something (phrasal verb) (to be deemed to be unworthy of something that was previously given).

I strip whenever I'm about to get in the shower. Don't you?

He stripped the ugly wallpaper off the walls, then decided to paint the walls.

She'll be stripped of her medal if she's found to be guilty of taking performance-enhancing drugs.

Stroke

1. move one's hand with gentle pressure over (a surface), typically repeatedly; caress.

“stroke” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stroke+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stroke something / someone

I stroke my dog when he sits on my lap.

The trainer stroked the horse’s mane with a brush.

He thinks he’s a brilliant person, so it’ll be easy for the woman to stroke his ego and make him swell with pride.

Noun: Stroke

He changed the details on the application form with the stroke of a pen.

Stuff

1. fill (a receptacle or space) tightly with something.

“stuff” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+stuff+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Stuff something

Stuff something into something

I often stuff a small Tupperware container full of teabags in preparation for a holiday, only to discover my holiday destination has plenty of teabags.

They stuffed all of their clothes into one giant suitcase.

They’ll glaze and stuff the turkey, then put it in the oven.

Noun: Stuff

I don't own a lot of stuff, which makes it easier for me to pack when I relocate to a new town or city.

Subtract

1. take away (a number or amount) from another to calculate the difference.
2. take away (something) from something else so as to decrease the size, number, or amount.

"subtract" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+subtract+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Subtract an amount of something

I can subtract small numbers in my head, but I need a calculator to subtract very large numbers.

She subtracted three apples from the bag of five apples so that two apples remained in the bag.

"We will need to subtract \$30 from the total to get the correct payment amount, because last month we accidentally overpaid our landlord \$30 and he didn't refund us," one tenant told the other.

Noun: Subtraction

Multiplication and subtraction are key mathematical concepts that should be understood by children, let alone someone wanting a career in mathematics.

Succeed

1. achieve the desired aim or result.

"succeed" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+succeed+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To succeed **Succeed in something**

I succeed in procrastinating every time I should be sitting down to write.

He succeeded in his first attempt.

The team will probably succeed this week, and if they succeed next week, they'll earn a chance to play off for the Championship.

Noun: Success

We act like the most successful people are the ones who have the most money, but perhaps subconsciously we know that the people who achieve true success are people who are most at peace. I think a more accurate measurement of success is the level of happiness one attains in the absence of things.

Suck

1. draw into the mouth by contracting the muscles of the lips and mouth to make a partial vacuum.

"suck" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+suck+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

To suck **Suck (+ noun + preposition of place + noun)**

I remember going to a dentist when I was younger, and the dentist gave me a lollipop. It's a strange reward, because sucking on sugar contradicts the message that we need to look after our teeth.

The vacuum cleaner sucked all of the dirt and dust off the carpet.

The little girl hopes she's sucked into a time portal and transported 1000 years into the future.

Suffer

1. experience or be subjected to (something bad or unpleasant).

“suffer” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+suffer+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Suffer something painful

I don't suffer from any allergies at the moment, but I know bodies change over time, and allergies can develop unexpectedly.

He suffered a broken leg and missed the final game of the season.

She'd like to leave, but she's going to suffer through the rest of the horrible movie **out of respect for** the filmmaker, her brother.

Suggest

1. put forward for consideration.
2. cause one to think that (something) exists or is the case.

“suggest” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+suggest+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Suggest something to someone or some group Suggest someone do something

I suggest that adults spend less time on social media if they want to convince their children to do the same.

He suggested that his company should hire more people from diverse backgrounds if it wants to be seen as an equal employment workplace.

The job recruiter suggested that the job seeker would have a better chance of securing a job if he gained some more qualifications.

Noun: Suggestion

He was not in a position to make demands or requests, but he was allowed to make suggestions.

Suit

1. be convenient for or acceptable to.
2. enhance the features, figure, or character of (someone).

“suit” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+suit+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Be suited to / for someone or something

I’m not suited for a job in accounting, because I’m not good with numbers.

The bikie was not suited to the role of office assistant.

The sheepdog will be suited to the farm because it needs a lot of space in which to run around.

Noun: Suit

The tailor took my measurements and made a perfect suit for me, which I wore at my best friend’s wedding.

Supply

1. make (something needed or wanted) available to someone; provide.

“supply” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+supply+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Supply something

Supply something to someone

Supply someone with something

I supply the tearoom with sugar, coffee, tea, and milk at the start of every week.

He supplied the restaurant with beers from his brewery.

The hospital will supply a bed for the elderly woman.

Noun: Supply / Supplies

They've got a huge supply of coal that they're selling to India.

Support

1. bear all or part of the weight of; hold up.
2. give assistance to, especially financially.

"support" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+support+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Support someone

Be supported by someone / something

It's important to provide support to people we care about.

He supported his father when his father was too old and frail to take care of himself.

She'll be able to get through university because she's being supported by a scholarship from the government.

Noun: Support

It's a shame that so many people in the world have to beg and plead just to get a bit of support.

Suppose

1. think or assume that something is true or probable but lack proof or certain knowledge.

2. be required to do something because of the position one is in or an agreement one has made.

“suppose” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+support+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Suppose something

Be supposed to do something

“I suppose you think I’m going to cancel our holiday just because we broke up?” the jilted man said to his ex-girlfriend. “Well, you’re sadly mistaken.”

Her friends were angry at her because she stayed home when she was supposed to be meeting them at the mall.

People are supposed to be quiet when they are in a library.

Noun: Supposition

Their eagerness to go to the football game was based on the supposition that the star player would be fit.

Surprise

1. (of something unexpected) cause (someone) to feel mild astonishment or shock.

“surprise” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+surprise+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Surprise someone

Be surprised by someone or something

I’m not surprised we have so many problems in the world at a time when corporations value profit more than human life.

He was surprised to receive a gift because he wasn’t expecting one.

She'll be surprised when she hears that the store is having another big sale.

Noun: Surprise

The teacher got a big surprise when he saw many past students had gathered to throw him a party.

Surround

1. be all round (someone or something).

"surround" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+surround+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Surround someone / something

It's wise to surround yourself with positive, interesting, kind people.

The police surrounded the criminal so he had nowhere to run or hide.

The couple are going to be scared when they're surrounded by a gang of thugs.

Noun: Surroundings

Your surroundings can seem quite benign, but they actually have a big influence on your mood, so be careful of who and what you decide to surround yourself with.

Suspect

1. have an idea or impression of the existence, presence, or truth of (something) without certain proof.

"suspect" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+suspect+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Suspect something or someone

I suspect I'll need to take a rest later in the day, because my coffee high is ending and I'm starting to feel a little sleepy.

She wasn't completely sure, but she suspected her husband was having an affair.

The doctor has not yet seen the extend of the patient's injuries, but he suspects – having read the initial report – that it'll take a long time before the patient fully recovers.

Noun: Suspect

Police are going to keep the suspect in a cell, overnight.

Suspend

1. temporarily prevent from continuing or being in force or effect.
2. hang (something) from somewhere.

“suspend” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+suspend+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Suspend someone or something

I thought I could see a man dressed in a cape, suspended from the top of a building. On closer inspection, I discovered it was a window cleaner with a sweater tied around his neck.

The player was suspended for breaking team rules.

Play is going to be suspended due to heavy rain, making play impossible.

Noun: Suspension

I recently saw a player receive a 3 match suspension for touching a referee on the field.

Switch

1. change the position, direction, or focus of.

“switch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+switch+meaning> (04 October, 2021)

Switch something

I’m glad I don’t have the type of OCD (Obsessive Compulsive Disorder) that compels some people to incessantly switch a light on and off before leaving their home.

The retailer could not find the right shirt straight away, because someone had switched it with a different shirt.

Nobody is going to be able to tell that the identical twin girls have switched places.

Noun: Switch

The switch beside my bedroom door turns the bedroom light on and off. For this reason, most people just call it a light switch.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

for that matter

When we see 'for that matter' it often reveals that an understanding of a situation involves an overestimation on the part of the person to whom the speaker is responding. It adds some new, relevant information that adds to someone's existing knowledge, judgement or analysis. It's often seen after the structure 'pronoun + modal verb + not even + the new, relevant information', as is seen in *italics* below:

"Do you like manga?"

"No, I don't like manga. I don't like any animation for that matter."

"Do you think he poisoned the water?"

"No, but I don't he'd have any concerns about people dying from drinking poisoned water for that matter. He's an evil person."

I don't want to go camping this weekend. I don't even want to step outside my house for that matter. I just want a quiet weekend at home.

"Do you prefer chicken or pork?"

"Neither. I don't eat meat. I don't eat any animal products for that matter, I'm a vegan."

That is to say

'That is to say' precedes some clarifying statement in order to clear up any potential ambiguity. It's also quite common for us to say 'that is *not* to say...' in order to eliminate a specific misunderstanding the listener may have received.

It's very windy today, so I'm not going to bother brushing my hair. That is to say, my hair never stays in place when it's windy, so brushing it would be pointless.

I walked into a craft store and saw a little old lady watching me from behind the counter. I didn't stay long. That is to say, the longer I stayed the more I felt pressured to buy something, so I just left.

I went fishing yesterday and it was quite boring. That is to say, I stayed there a long time and didn't catch any fish.

We took the Hungarian exchange student to the beach, and she was mesmerised. That is to say, she was amazed to see the vast blue ocean for the first time in her life.

why is it that...?

'Why is it that...?' asks why a particular set of circumstances are the way they are, or why they've been done in a particular way. It can be useful on occasions where something seems confusing, considering what else is known in relation to it. In such cases, we would otherwise come to an entirely different conclusion due to the best available evidence.

Why is it that so many talented people live in obscurity, while many other less talented people are celebrated and admired?

Why is that we fail to keep in touch with some of the most friendly people we meet throughout our travels?

Why is it that so many people chose to focus on hate and differences between people, when there's so many more ways in which we're similar?

Why is that we procrastinate and repeat bad habits when all it does is produce or heighten a negative consequence?

their respective owners

To use the word 'respective' in this way indicates things of a similar kind belong separately to each of two or more people or things. It eliminates the possibility of an inference of one thing belonging to the collective.

The homeowners wheeled their respective bins to the front of their respective yards, so the garbage truck could empty the bins the following morning.

The customers grabbed their respective drinks, and chatted as they left the café.

The campers erected their respective tents, then later that night gathered around a campfire and shared stories.

The scientists analysed their respective data and set about drawing some conclusions.

of his own

We use 'of his/her own' after a description of something one owns. It is often used to correct a false assumption – due to a stereotype or assumption – that a particular item, for example, might be so unusual, unpopular or scarce as to warrant the belief (ultimately turning out to be incorrect) that the listener doesn't own one. The listener then responds to remedy the error.

I don't need instructions on how to use this remote. I know how it works because I have one of my own.

She rarely does what authority figures tell her to do – she has own set of beliefs and principles.

"Have you ever been into a wine cellar?"

"Oh, yes, many times. We have one of our own."

We can't be too concerned about whether the neighbours can pay their bills. We have enough financial problems of our own.

doesn't seem too fussed

To 'not be too fussed' is to not be too bothered by something. We often see this expression when two or more options are available, and any one of those options are fine. It can also be used to convey that we're content (or that we're content to tolerate) something that might otherwise be perceived as an irritation or frustration. In which case you can say 'I'm not too fussed,' to the relevant person or people to let them know they're free to continue whichever behaviour or activity is in question. You can also use 'I'm not fussy,' in specific contexts, or use it in a general sense to infer you're not the type of person who ever agonises over which available option is best.

"I accidentally gave that guy a latte," the barista confessed to a colleague. "But he ordered a flat white."

"Don't worry. He's had a few sips and doesn't seem too fussed."

I think there'll be a lot of traffic on the way to the airport, but we're not too fussed; we've given ourselves plenty of time.

"She asked for a pink bike for Christmas, but the bike shop only had one in blue."

"She doesn't seem too fussed. It looks like she's enjoying her new, blue bike."

"Yeah, in fact blue is her new favourite colour."

The electrician installed the wrong lighting fixture, but I'm not too fussed. As long as he doesn't charge me extra for the time it takes him to fix it.

tends to be

If someone 'tends to be' a certain way, it means that they consistently exhibit a feeling and / or action in a specific way. This consistency leads to the belief that the behaviour is characteristic of the individual generally, or in specific circumstances or under certain conditions. It can also apply to a thing in relation to the way it normally functions.

It tends to be wet and windy here in the winter, and hot and humid in the summer.

He tends to get very angry when reporters ask him about his personal life.

She tends to drink white wine when eating salad, and red wine when she's having a steak. Her husband tends to drink beer or order a soda.

My big toe tends to make a hole in every pair of shoes that I wear for any considerable length of time.

I can't help but...

'I can't help but...' precedes a description of a thought or behaviour that one cannot stop themselves from thinking or doing. 'I can't help but think + (this particular way, (or) these particular thoughts)' communicates the thing or things that have regularly occupied one's mind. We therefore (since it's not possible for others to know what's motivating our thoughts or behaviour) often use this phrase to share why those thoughts or behaviours can't be prevented. Often, we wish for circumstances to be different, and thus we imagine the way things would have been if things were done differently.

I can't help but recognise that my mood is always lifted when grey clouds pass and everything gets bathed in sunshine.

He can't help but feel guilty and regretful for causing emotional pain to the people he cares about.

When I'm searching for a movie to watch on a streaming site, I can't help but take a long time deciding which one to watch.

She can't help but think that if she stayed overseas, she may have found a good job and a boyfriend.

little did she know

'Little did she know' is not implying that she knew little, but in fact she had no knowledge at all of the details that follow. It's often therefore used to explain or suggest what thought or action one would have likely taken had they been in possession of all the relevant facts.

"We decided to take a holiday in a lovely city in Europe. Little did we know, violent protests were taking place when we arrived." = (The suggestion being): Had we known about the situation, we would've chosen to go to a different city.

"Little did he know, the tree in his backyard was an apple tree." = He knew there was a tree in his backyard, but didn't know it was an apple tree.

She was angry with her boyfriend for being late. Little did she know, he was late because he'd been busy planning a surprise party for her.

The passengers on the train platform were growing increasingly frustrated with the delay. Little did they know, the reason for the delay was due to a fatal accident.

He wanted to see a shooting star just once in his life. Little did he know, a meteor shower graced the skies the night before.

The couple wanted to enjoy their holiday surrounded by many other tourists. Little did they know, theirs was one of the few countries permitted access to the island at that time. This fact meant that there were very few tourists, and few shops were open to serve the couple when they arrived.

go for my daily walk

To 'go for one's daily walk' or to engage in any daily routine, simply conveys a habit that's conducted on a daily basis. A daily walk therefore refers to the walking an individual does every day of the week.

"You can eat your dessert after you've completed your daily chores," the mother told her son.

I do a daily workout session to try and keep in shape, but I'm thinking of making Wednesday a rest day.

Part of his daily routine was to buy the newspaper and then read the financial news.

I've tried having a tea or smoothie in the morning, but I really don't feel myself until I've had my daily coffee.

anyway

'Anyway' is the word we use to convey to the listener that a particular set of details – in light of another particular set of details – are somewhat irrelevant.

It doesn't matter that I forgot to bring an umbrella, because it didn't rain anyway.

We might feel the need to use this word when we're compelled to defend our position or diminish the level of aggravation that someone else feels, and for which they've declared that we are the guilty party, or deserve a share of the blame for an indiscretion. It would not necessarily diminish the level of culpability on our part, but the new information may help diffuse the temper of the person who is aggrieved.

Yeah, I probably shouldn't have left crumbs on the kitchen bench, but the cleaner cleaned it anyway.

Here are a few more examples:

My shoes got quite wet when I stepped in a big puddle. They were ruined, but I didn't mind, because I was going to throw those shoes out anyway.

"I don't mean to be an inconvenience, but I'd love a chance to stretch my legs," the passenger told the driver from the back seat of the car.

"That's ok," the driver replied. "I was planning to stop 1km up to road to get some fuel anyway."

*"I'm very sorry, we don't have any ice cream available tonight."
"That's ok. The main meal was delicious and filled me up. I won't be requiring dessert anyway."*

She told her boyfriend not to get her a gift on Valentine's day, but he got her a lovely bunch of flowers anyway.

out of respect for

'Out of respect for' usually follows a description of an action that's taken place, and holds that we have chosen to adopt such behaviour for a person or group mentioned after this combination of words.

"He'll go to the concert out of respect for his sister," is a way of saying, if not for the level of respect for his sister, he would not go to the concert; it is only due to his feelings for her and about her that he's chosen to go there.

It can also be used at the start of a sentence, followed by the person or group for whom the respect is held, which is then followed by a description of what action they're choosing to take.

Out of respect for the family, the media allowed the grieving individuals to mourn in private.

She was due to retire at the end of the year, but decided to stay on for another couple of months out of respect for her manager, who was having difficulty finding a new staff member.

He gave a lot of his wealth to a charity, out of respect for the work that the charity had done in helping people in the community.

Maria's dying wish was to see her two children, Lisa and Luke, reunite. Out of respect for their mother, the two agreed to meet up and resolve their differences.

throw him a party

To 'throw someone a party' is to organise a party for them. It is informal language and usually refers to a spur of the moment decision to celebrate something or someone, given some recent event or information that would warrant an impromptu celebration.

We're going to throw you a party. You only turn 50, once!

The pub manager cleared his Sunday schedule and threw a big surprise party for one of the loyal patrons, who was about to turn 75.

The flatmates threw a going away party for their friend, who was due to leave for Africa the following morning.

Although he didn't want anyone to make a big deal about his return, his parents threw him a big welcome home party.

T



Talk

1. speak in order to give information or express ideas or feelings; converse or communicate by spoken words.

“talk” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+talk+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Talk to someone

Talk about something

Talk it out (phrasal verb) (to resolve a conflict through conversation and discussion)

I talk to my friends once or twice a week.

She talked for two straight hours.

The scientist is going to talk about climate change, at the convention.

Noun: Talk

The crowd cheered when the guest finished his talk – not because it was a wonderful talk, but because it was so long and boring that everyone was relieved it had finished.

Tame

1. domesticate (an animal).

“tame” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tame+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tame an animal

I wish it were possible to tame some of the more dangerous wild animals.

Although they initially lived in the wild, the birds were injured at a very young age. They were rescued by animal welfare officers, and were then tamed in captivity **over the course of** several months.

"We're going to tame the alligator so we can swim with it, without it attacking us," one very stupid man said.

Noun: Tame

Spectators were worried that the eagle would become aggressive and use its claws to scratch, but it was very tame. It remained calm despite being surrounded by so many people.

Tap

1. draw liquid through the tap or spout of (a cask, barrel, or other container).
2. exploit or draw a supply from (a resource).

"tap" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tap+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tap something or someone

I tap my brother's shoulder when I want to get his attention.

She didn't want her boyfriend's parents to know she had come to their house, so she tapped on her boyfriend's bedroom window to let him know she had arrived.

He'll nervously tap his fingers on the table.

Noun: Tap

I heard a tap coming from the living room, so I went to see what was causing it.

Taste

1. perceive or experience the flavour of.
2. have experience of.

“taste” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+taste+meaning> (05
October, 2021)

Taste something

I like to taste a range different foods when I travel.

She tasted the soup to see if it needed more salt.

He’s going to eat the lemon cake, and there’s no doubt he’ll think it tastes very sweet.

Noun: Taste

A popular Australian breakfast spread is called Vegemite. I really like it, but most people trying it for the first time think it is has a bitter taste, and they think the flavour is too strong.

Tease

1. make fun of or attempt to provoke (a person or animal) in a playful way.

“tease” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tease+meaning> (05
October, 2021)

Tease someone

Tease it out (phrasal verb) (“it” usually refers to something like an underdeveloped idea. To tease out an idea means to get creative to develop it, to discover its intricacies and implications, and ultimately determine its potential)

I tease my friends because they know it’s all **in the name of** fun. I wouldn’t tease a stranger if I thought they’d be offended.

The other girls at school teased the new student because they were afraid the new student would threaten their popularity.

The boy is going to spend his lunchtime in detention because his teacher won’t tolerate him teasing a smaller boy at school.

Noun: Tease

The girl behind the counter at the cafeteria is such a tease – she flirts with all the guys and hints that she'd like to be asked out on a date, but whenever someone asks her out, she tells them she has a boyfriend.

Tempt

1. entice or try to entice (someone) to do something that they find attractive but know to be wrong or unwise.

"tempt" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tempt+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tempt someone

Be tempted by someone or something

I don't want to tempt you into doing something you don't want to do, I just **want the best for you**.

He was tempted to travel by train due to his fear of flying, but he needed to get to his destination quickly.

She's going to be tempted to eat ice cream, because she loves sweet foods and she's approaching an ice creamery.

Noun: Temptation

The café at the end of my street sells the nicest cakes and pastries. I allow myself to buy something sweet from there every Sunday, but it's difficult to resist the temptation to get something every day of the week.

Terrify

1. cause to feel extreme fear.

“terrify” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+terrify+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Terrify someone

Terrified of / by someone or something

I think people who enjoy terrifying others have some psychological pain or illness.

He was terrified of the monsters under his bed.

She was terrified by the thought that her country might go to war.

Noun: Terror

The victims of the bomb attacks were traumatized. Some were hysterical, some were in shock, and almost all of them felt that the overwhelming sense of terror that engulfed their community would not subside for a long time, because the war had only just begun.

Test

1. take measures to check the quality, performance, or reliability of (something), especially before putting it into widespread use or practice.

“test” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+test+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Test someone / something

I test my pen on a scrap piece of paper before using it to write a formal letter.

She tested the electrical appliance before buying it.

The loud man on the bus is going to test the patience of his fellow commuters if he continues his shouting. He’s making it impossible for them to have a peaceful journey.

Noun: Test

The teacher was not impressed with her students' homework, so she announced a date for a test, hoping this would motivate them to study harder.

Thank

1. express gratitude to (someone), especially by saying 'Thank you'.

"thank" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+thank+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Thank someone for something

I thank the cook before and after eating my dinner.

She thanked her friend for taking her to the hospital.

The retiring player will thank his teammates for playing well in his final game.

Noun: Thanks

The supervisor gave thanks to all the employees for their hard work and loyal support over the years.

Thaw

1. (of ice, snow, or another frozen substance, such as food) become liquid or soft as a result of warming up.

"thaw" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+thaw+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Thaw something

I feel like a frozen slab of meat that has to thaw out if I spend any time naked in the snow.

He thawed the ice until it transformed into a puddle of water.

She'll take the chicken out of the freezer so it can thaw.

Tick

1. mark (an item) with a tick or select (a box) on a form, questionnaire, etc. to indicate that something has been chosen, checked, approved, or dealt with.
2. (of a clock or other mechanical device) make regular short, sharp sounds, typically one for every second of time that passes.

“tick” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tick+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tick something

Tick someone off (phrasal verb) (to make someone angry)

I don't want to tick anyone off while they're driving; there are a lot of crazy drivers prone to road rage.

He ticked the box with a black pen.

The form will show that the applicant needs to tick a box to indicate their selection.

Noun: Tick

The teacher told the students she would not be grading their homework with a pass or fail mark.

“If your homework has a green tick, it means I'm pleased with your work and you can do some arts and crafts,” she said. “If you see a red tick, there are some mistakes in your work and you need to continue studying.”

The students didn't like this method, because it didn't allow them to know the mistakes they'd made, and the failing students knew they'd be jealous watching the other kids do arts and crafts.

Tickle

1. lightly touch or prod (a person or a part of the body) in a way that causes mild discomfort or itching and often laughter.

“tickle” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tickle+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tickle someone

I can tickle myself by lightly touching my foot with the toenail of my other foot.

The father tickled his kids under their arms and caused them to roll around the floor, squealing with laughter.

The woman became annoyed at her boyfriend after he repeatedly tickled her feet with his fingernails.

Noun: Tickle

Sometimes a tingling sensation can feel like a tickle.

Tie x2

1. attach or fasten with string or similar cord.

“tie” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tie+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tie something

Tie something together (phrasal verb) (to bind things by tying, or to join something abstract by recognising or creating an association)

2. a result in a game or other competitive situation in which two or more competitors or teams have the same score or ranking; a draw.

“tie” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tie+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tie something (like a game)

If the game is tied when the final siren sounds, the teams will play extra time to determine a winner.

I can tie my shoelaces, but I prefer to keep them tied, then slide my feet in and out with minimal effort.

He tied the shoelaces of his motorcycle boots, then put on his helmet.

She'll have to tie the rope so it securely fastens the thing it's wrapped around.

The carpet and the drapes really tie the room together; the design doesn't look complete without them.

Noun: Tie / Tied

The game ended in a tie. The rules state that if the game is tied at the time of the final siren, the teams must return the following week to play again.

Time

1. plan, schedule, or arrange when (something) should happen or be done.
2. measure the time taken by (a process or activity, or a person doing it).

“time” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+time+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Time something / someone

My roommate and I time each other's minutes spent in the shower. We think we can save a lot of water by competing like this.

The trainer timed the athlete's run, and she completed it in 8 minutes and 45 seconds.

The comedian is going to make the crowd laugh, primarily because she times the delivery of her jokes perfectly.

Noun: Time

He doesn't have time to prepare for the marathon. He's too unfit and lazy to be ready in two weeks.

Tip x 4

1. attach to or cover the end or extremity of.

"tip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tip+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tip something (so that it's covered at its tip)

2. overbalance so as to fall or turn over.

"tip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tip+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tip something (over)

3. give (someone) a sum of money as a reward for a service.

"tip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tip+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tip someone (some money)

4. predict as likely to win or achieve something.

“tip” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tip+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tip (as in, to make a prediction that a person or group will be successful)

The snow tips the peaks of the mountains in winter.

The photo tipped over the edge of the shelf and fell to the floor.

I don't tip retail assistants here, because it's not an Australian custom.

He'll tip his football team to win next week.

Noun: Tip x2

1. My father and brother and I used to go to the tip when we needed to get rid of things they couldn't fit in a conventional street bin. Sometimes you can find hidden treasures at the tip, because people throw away things they no longer have a use for, but those items may be of value to someone else.
2. I don't usually give bartenders a tip. They get an hourly wage here. Tipping is a common custom in the United States though.

Touch

1. come into or be in contact with.
2. handle in order to interfere with, alter, or otherwise affect.

“touch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+touch+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Touch something / someone

Touch on / off (phrasal verb) (with reference to travel on public transportation, to touch a card against an automated machine when entering and exiting transport and transport hubs in order to accurately register your use of the system so it can deduct your credit accordingly)

I touch the stove very tentatively if I need to use it, in case someone else has recently used it and made it hot.

He leaned over and touched his toes with his hands.

She'll lightly touch her wound, even though the doctor told her not to touch it.

We'll need to use our travel cards to touch on and off every time we enter and exit public transport.

Noun: Touch

The blind man could never see his girlfriend's physical beauty, but he could create a mental image by touching her face and body. She felt alive and full of joy when exposed to his gentle **touch**, and when seeing the smile that crept across his face every time he caressed her.

Tour

1. make a tour of (an area).

"tour" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tour+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tour somewhere

I tour the windy roads that lead into the hills and valleys of the South Gippsland region of Australia.

The couple went on holiday and toured the Gili Islands of Indonesia.

She'll be curious to know whether it's best to tour the Rocky Mountains by car, or by train.

Noun: Tour

I'd love to go on a tour of Africa and see the wild animals in the Kruger National Park, but these days I try not to think about travel because I know it'll be quite some time before I'm able to leave my country.

Tow

1. (of a motor vehicle or boat) pull (another vehicle or boat) along with a rope, chain, or tow bar.

"tow" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tow+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tow something

I had to tow a trailer when I moved to a new home.

The man's car was towed away because it was parked illegally, and he had to retrieve it from the tow company's depot.

Her car is going to break down, so she'll need another car to tow it to a mechanic.

Noun: Tow

Sometimes Formula 1 drivers say a specific lap they completed was aided by a tow. This refers to the slipstream they get when driving behind another vehicle, where the air is moving in the same motion and thus helps drag, or tow, the car at a faster pace than usual.

Trace

1. find or discover by investigation.
2. copy (a drawing, map, or design) by drawing over its lines on a superimposed piece of transparent paper.

"trace" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trace+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Trace something / someone

You can copy a drawing if you place a thin piece of paper over it, then trace what you see with a pencil, pen, piece of charcoal, etc.

Police traced the suspect's movements to an abandoned warehouse and arrested him there.

The wild animal will trace the steps of its prey by using its strong sense of smell.

Noun: Trace

Investigators couldn't find any criminal behaviour attributable to their suspect, either because he was innocent, or because he had been careful not to leave a trace.

Trade

1. buy and sell goods and services.
2. exchange (something) for something else, typically as a commercial transaction.

"trade" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trade+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Trade something / someone (like an athlete at a sporting club)

Trade in (phrasal verb) (to give something with the knowledge that some compensation will be returned)

Trade off (phrasal verb) (to exchange something of value, typically knowing that a compromise will have to be made in order to receive a desired benefit)

The club hopes to trade one of their experienced players for a younger player who has the potential to develop into a star athlete.

I'll go to the car dealership and trade in my car if I can't find a private seller who's willing to buy it for a reasonable price.

The country will trade off some of their resources, in exchange for friendlier diplomatic ties and a boost to their tourism industry.

Noun: Trade

Football fans regularly compare their team's players with other team's players, including having opinions about which club had the most successful trade. The more successful trade is claimed by the club that gained a greater advantage as a result of the exchange.

Train

1. teach (a person or animal) a particular skill or type of behaviour through practice and instruction over a period of time.

"train" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+train+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Train someone (including oneself)

I should train myself to rise earlier and do a workout before breakfast.

The athlete trained for four years in preparation for the Olympic Games.

The astronauts will do a lot of training in preparation for their space mission.

Transport

1. take or carry (people or goods) from one place to another by means of a vehicle, aircraft, or ship.
2. overwhelm (someone) with a strong emotion, especially joy.

"transport" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+transport+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Transport someone / something

I wonder what it would feel like to transport from one planet to another **in a matter of** seconds.

The limousine transported the celebrity to the function.

The ambulance will transport the sick man to the hospital.

Noun: Transportation

Boats, cars, trucks, planes and bikes are different modes of transportation.

Trap

1. catch (an animal) in a trap.
2. trick or deceive (someone) into doing something contrary to their interests or intentions.

“trap” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trap+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Trap something / someone

I think the pandemic has the potential to cause the government to panic and make a decision to trap citizens inside the state.

The woman was trapped inside the broken elevator.

The man from the pest control company trapped the rodent so it could be captured.

Firefighters are going to have to break the door of a burning house to free a woman, trapped inside.

Noun: Trap

Traps are often used for hunting, but some people say they are inhumane, because animals can be captured in traps and die a slow, painful death.

Travel

1. go from one place to another, typically over a distance of some length.
2. (of an object or radiation) move, typically in a constant or predictable way.

“travel” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+travel+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Travel somewhere

I love to travel to meet new people and try new foods.

The newly married couple travelled to a tropical island for their honeymoon.

The adventurous man is going to travel around the country for 60 days.

Noun: Travel

I haven't done a lot of travel in the last 2 years.

Treat

1. behave towards or deal with in a certain way.
2. give medical care or attention to; try to heal or cure.

“treat” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+treat+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Treat someone

I try to treat people with respect, but sometimes it's difficult – like when I'm tired and cranky.

The union representative felt he'd been treated poorly. He was told by the government that he was not only forbidden from making requests, but he was also forbidden from making suggestions.

The paramedics will treat the injured woman inside the ambulance.

Noun: Treat

Treats are typically items or gestures that make the receiver feel appreciated.

Tremble

1. (of a person, a part of the body, or the voice) shake involuntarily, typically as a result of anxiety, excitement, or frailty.

“tremble” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tremble+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tremble (due to some precipitating movement, or an emotion such as fear)

I would hope to stay very still if a snake slid up my leg, but **in all likelihood** I'd tremble with fear.

An earthquake shook the city and all of the buildings trembled.

The woman might tremble when she sees her attacker in the courtroom.

Noun: Tremble

A loud tremble echoed throughout the city, causing everyone to gasp and feel anxious about what would happen next.

Trick

1. cunningly deceive or outwit.

“trick” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trick+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Trick someone

It's ok to trick someone when it makes them confused over a trivial matter, but it's not ok – in my opinion – to trick them into feeling terrified.

The magician tricked the audience using misdirection.

The footballer is mischievous. If he is struck ever so lightly by an opposition player, he will pretend he's been viciously hit and injured in an attempt to trick the referee into giving him a penalty kick.

Noun: Trick

A magician uses misdirection when performing card tricks. The types of tricks a skateboarder performs are not like the mental manipulation techniques a magician uses to fool spectators, they're physical skills perfected after many hours of practice.

Trip

1. catch one's foot on something and stumble or fall.

"trip" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trip+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Trip someone

Be tripped by someone or something

I am embarrassed when people see me trip and fall.

She was penalised for tripping her opponent with her foot.

The old man doesn't have good strength or coordination. He shouldn't be walking outside at all, **let alone** during a storm. I think he's is going to trip over a fallen tree branch and land on his hip.

Noun: Trip

I took a trip to a beach resort and went snorkelling.

Trot

1. (with reference to a horse or other four-legged animal) proceed or cause to proceed at a pace faster than a walk, lifting each diagonal pair of legs alternately.
2. (of a person) run at a moderate pace with short steps.

“trot” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trot+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

To trot

I can't imitate a horse. I can sound like one, but I can't trot the way they do.

She trotted down the hallway.

The horse is going to trot towards the stable and relax now, in preparation for the race tomorrow.

Trouble

1. cause distress or anxiety to.

“trouble” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trouble+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Trouble someone

Be troubled by something / someone

I would like a sachet of tomato sauce for my egg and bacon pie, but it's not important. I don't want to trouble the café staff for a packet of sauce when they're busy dealing with other customers.

The protesters troubled the authorities with their threats of violence.

“Could we trouble you for a glass of water?” the newly arrived guests politely asked the hotel employee.

Noun: Trouble

The loud kid in the library was not interested in finding a book, he was just an angry boy causing trouble.

Trust

1. firm belief in the reliability, truth, or ability of someone or something.

“trust” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+trust+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Trust someone

I trust that some nice meditation music and scented candles will calm him down.

He trusted her because she had always been very reliable in the past.

The woman was not concerned by the fact her husband was surrounded by beautiful women at his job, because she fully trusted him.

Noun: Trust

“You keep going against my wishes,” the father told his teenage daughter. “You won’t be able to borrow my car again until you regain my trust.”

Try

1. make an attempt or effort to do something.
2. subject (someone) to trial.

“try” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+try+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Try something

Try something on (phrasal verb) (to wear an item of clothing, equipment, or a costume, to see how it looks and feels)

Psychologists sometimes recommend that people try a new hobby, or try changing routines in order to bring about a positive change.

They couple tried to make a reservation at the restaurant, but unfortunately it was all booked out.

He'll try to connect to the internet, but his Wi-Fi won't work.

We tried on several costumes, but none of them fit.

Tug

1. pull (something) hard or suddenly.

“tug” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tug+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Tug something

I tug on my jumper when some fabric is stuck in the zipper.

The stuck ships were finally tugged away from the reef.

She tugged the boots off her feet, cleaned them, then left them outside to dry.

Tumble

1. fall suddenly, clumsily, or headlong.

“tumble” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+tumble+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

To tumble

I like to watch rocks tumble down a mountain and into an empty valley.

He finished the 100 metre sprint, but his momentum caused him to fall and tumble.

The rock was dislodged and it tumbled down the hill.

Noun: Tumble drier

I want to wear my favourite shirt tonight. It's on the clothesline outside, and the weather report is forecasting rain, so I'll put it in the tumble drier instead.

Turn

1. move in a circular direction wholly or partly round an axis or point.
2. move (something) so that it is in a different position in relation to its surroundings or its previous position.

“turn” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+turn+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Turn (from one position to another)

Turn something into something

Turn someone against something / someone (phrasal verb) (to convince someone to disavow their level of support of someone or something, in most cases going so far as to be in opposition)

Turn on / off (phrasal verb) (to turn something on or off activates or deactivates its function. To turn someone on or off is to (voluntarily or involuntarily) attract or repel them)

Turn out (phrasal verb) (to arrive, typically in large numbers. The final amount that do arrive are known as the noun: turn out)

I need to turn around and go home to retrieve something.

“Let’s watch the tadpoles turn into frogs,” the kid said to his friend.

She drove her car through an intersection and then turned left, into a driveway.

His face was getting warm as he tried to sleep, so he turned the pillow over.

All too often we see people using platforms like Twitter to smear and discredit reputable people. The nasty attacks cause unscrupulous, lazy, virtue-signalling social media trolls to turn on the innocent victims, and encourage everyone else to do the same.

Noun: Turn

When I’m in a hurry in city traffic, lots of left and right turns make me frustrated because it often takes a long time to wait for traffic to clear at the intersections. I prefer driving on curved roads surrounded by picturesque scenery in the countryside.

“We had a great turn out for John’s 50th birthday party,” the woman told her mother. “Many of his new and old friends were able to **make it on the night.**”

Twist

1. form into a bent, curling, or distorted shape.
2. cause to rotate around a stationary point; turn.

“twist” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+twist+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Twist something (including one’s own body)

If I twist my body too far and too fast, I’m likely to strain my muscles.

The dancers twisted and turned on the dance-floor.

She’ll twist the bottle cap off the bottle.

Type

1. write (something) on a typewriter or computer by pressing the keys.

“type” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+type+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Type something

I type on my computer most days of the week.

He typed the words with a typewriter.

She'll type the emails and memos very quickly because she wants to go home, and she's allowed to leave work as soon as those tasks are completed.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

over the course of

'Over the course of' is a phrase that precedes a period of time or an event. 'Over the course of + period of time or event' is like saying 'a duration spanning this amount (and during this specified event/era etc.)' and is used before or after details which refer to what happened during that time. It is a little formal and often used to condense an incident or incidents, thereby explaining that its process was gradual in nature, coming to its eventual arrival at the end of the specified course of time.

Political protests erupted in the country's capital over the course of several weeks.

Over the course of several decades, she became famous for her song-writing ability, stage presence, charity work, and her success as a businesswoman.

To my knowledge, few species have just one mate over the course of a lifetime.

Too many lives have been needlessly and painfully lost over the course of human history.

in the name of

Doing or saying something 'in the name of' something else implies that one has done or said it for the sake of the thing described, and not their own personal self-interest.

He's donated his time and money in the name of charity.

It's often used in an exaggerated way as a way to implore someone to behave in a way that's representative of a thing or concept or institution, and to act otherwise would be to disrespect that thing and all it stands for.

In the name of all that is holy, please wear a nice pair of shoes to the fancy dinner party this weekend. The flip-flops are very inappropriate.

One can also do something 'in the name of' an authority, as the rules – and hence the adherence to those rules – are particular to that governing body.

He's suspended from school for 1 week in the name of proper schoolyard etiquette.

Here are a few more examples:

In the name of all that is holy, please stop sliding your fingernails down the blackboard. I can't stand it!

He campaigned for same-sex marriage in the name of equal rights.

She declared, in the name of free speech and freedom of the press, that the journalist should not be imprisoned or censored for publishing material that exposed government crimes. On the contrary, he should be celebrated.

He believed people should look after themselves and others in the name of social responsibility.

want the best for you

To 'want the best for someone' is to want that person to live their best possible life. One might say this in the context of being seemingly irritating, or even cruel towards another person, and wanting to remind or convince them that the behaviour is actually done with the best of intentions, believing that it's the best route to seeing that person fulfilled.

Our relationship didn't end well, but now I can honestly say that I want her to be happy. I really just want the best for her.

She was deeply suspicious of his intentions because he'd treated her poorly in the past, and now claims he just wants the best for her.

She tried to make her husband feel comfortable in his ailing state because she wanted the best for him.

"I know it seems like I'm being cruel, but I only want the best for you," the mother told her son. "And the best thing for you right now is for me to sell your PlayStation."

primarily because...

If something is said or done 'primarily because' , what follows this combination of words is given as the main reason something has taken place, or will take place. We might feel inspired to use this when there are multiple motivations for something, but one in particular stands out as more relevant or pertinent.

I'd love to see some of the small towns and villages in Europe, and taste the delicious food, but I'm going there primarily because I want to see a nice girl from France, who I met while travelling in Canada.

I've always been somewhat interested in nature, but I'm studying botany primarily because I recently learned of the amazing array of plant medicines that exist in the natural world.

I wear long-sleeve shirts primarily because I don't like sunscreen, and need to protect my skin from the sun's harmful rays.

I do think hiking is a great way to keep fit, but I primarily started the hobby because I needed to find an alternative to reading toxic Twitter comments first thing in the morning.

in a matter of seconds

If something has occurred – or is about to occur – 'in a matter of seconds' the speaker is emphasising that it will occur very soon. It may be used, among other ways, as a way to ease the anxiety of someone who would benefit from the update that 'in a matter of seconds' could provide, or it could be to let someone know of imminent danger.

*"I'm sick of sitting in the back of this car. When will we be there?"
"Quit your whining, and be patient. We'll be there in a matter of seconds."*

*"Hi, I've been waiting fifteen minutes for my meal. I just wonder how much longer it might take?"
"Not to worry, I just spoke to the chef, and it'll be ready in a matter of seconds."*

Due to the exponential growth rate, the virus can spread to many people in a matter of seconds.

It's been a long race, but the winning car will come around the final turn in a matter of seconds.

in all likelihood

We use 'in all likelihood' as a slightly more formal way of saying what's more likely to occur, or to have occurred. It shows that one has a fairly strong conviction that a particular circumstance exists, (or that one is confident of the motivation behind a behaviour), by way of explaining the logic or reasoning for their conclusion. We sometimes like to speculate on what someone might have been thinking or doing in the lead-up to a matter of interest.

I've got a fair amount of work to do, but in all likelihood, if I work hard I'll have it finished by the end of the day.

Many people predict a long battle, but in all likelihood, it will be a short battle; one team is vastly outnumbered and under-resourced.

In all likelihood, the lives of future humans will be more connected with AI technology.

In all likelihood, you're going to have an accident if you continue to drive so fast and recklessly.

let alone...

We see 'let alone' in response to someone having an understanding of something that shows limited knowledge or a lack of perception, and want to tell them about more relevant details that either support or counteract their argument, whichever the case may be. We might like to add the extra information when someone has underestimated, or failed to estimate what is most important to the person or people involved in the decision making or act to which they may be referring.

Have you skydived?

Have I skydived? No, I've never even flown in a plane, let alone skydived.

What's your favourite type of steak?

I've never eaten steak, let alone chosen a favourite type.

Have you ever managed a major corporation?

I've never even managed a small business, let alone a major corporation.

What's your favourite Christmas movie?

I've never seen any movie, let alone a Christmas movie. I grew up without a television, and I love reading books.

make it on the night

To say one can or cannot 'make it on the night' simply means they can or cannot be there at that place on that night. They cannot arrange or rearrange their schedule in such a way as to make their attendance possible.

"We're having a surprise party for Jim on the 27th."

"Oh, I can't make it on that night, unfortunately. I already have other plans."

We're going to have a social event at the bowling club this Sunday. We encourage everyone to come, and please bring a drink and a platter of sandwiches if you can make it on the day.

We'd love to see all of you at our engagement party if you can make it to our place on the evening of the 14th.

I had to attend my father-in-law's birthday on the weekend, which meant I couldn't make it to the concert to see my favourite band. It was such bad timing.

U



Undress

1. take off one's clothes.

“undress” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+undress+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Undress oneself or someone else

Undress out of something (that’s being worn)

I undress in the bathroom before getting into the shower.

She undressed in the changeroom and put on a different **set of clothes**.

He’ll undress out of his work clothes, have a shower, then put on something more comfortable.

Unfasten

1. undo or unfasten (something that is tied or tied up).

“unfasten” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+unfasten+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Unfasten something

I sometimes unfasten my belt before sitting down to eat a meal. Doing so helps ease the pressure of the waistband pressing into my stomach.

She unfastened her seatbelt and got out of the car.

He’ll unfasten a rope that’s tied around another man’s hands.

Unite

1. come or bring together for a common purpose or action.

2. come or bring together to form a whole.

“unite” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+unite+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Unite with someone, or some group

I like to see enemies settle their differences and unite to fight a greater evil.

The two players were usually competitive rivals, but they united to fight against a common enemy.

She believes, regardless of our differences, everyone is going to need to unite in order to combat global warming.

Noun: United

Groups need to stick together and stay united when there is turmoil affecting them, but groups consist of people, and people can also be exposed to different thoughts, opinions and influences that can fracture and divide the group.

Unlock

1. undo the lock of (something), typically with a key.
2. use a password or other form of authentication to access the full functionality or data of (a computer, mobile phone, file, etc.).

“unlock” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+unlock+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Unlock something (real or abstract)

I want to unlock the full power of the mind.

He unlocked the door with his key, then he went inside.

She'll unlock the liquor cabinet and take a bottle of whisky, despite the fact her father specifically told her not to take anything.

Unpack

1. open and remove the contents of (a suitcase, bag, or package).
2. remove (something) from a suitcase, bag, or package.

"unpack" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+unpack+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Unpack something

I unpack boxes of my possessions when I move to a new place.

The customs officials at the airport asked the traveller to unpack his bag so they could search inside it.

The man will unpack his suitcase once he gets it onto the hotel room bed.

Use

1. take, hold, or deploy (something) as a means of accomplishing or achieving something; employ.
2. take or consume (an amount) from a limited supply.

"use" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+use+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

Use something / someone

I use a thermos for carrying water or coffee whenever I **set off** for a drive.

The girl used her phone to take a photo and upload the image to Facebook.

The old man is going to use a cloth to wipe the kitchen bench.

Noun: Use

I think I lost my sunglasses on the highway. I must have put them on the roof of my car while putting groceries in the back seat, then forgot to grab them before taking off. There is no use trying to retrieve them. Surely they've been taken by another driver or smashed under the wheel of a car.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

set of clothes

'Set' can be used with 'clothes' just as it can be used with other nouns that can be grouped by type or category. Saying a particular outfit makes a good 'set' makes it clear the separate items match well in combination with the other items.

My mum has a nice set of kitchenware she uses for cooking, and a lovely set of plates and crockery she uses during the festive season.

I have an old set of football cards that might be worth a lot of money these days.

My brother likes the Lord of the Rings movies. He collected the whole set.

I've got a set of clothes that I wear for formal occasions, a set of clothes for casual settings, a set of clothes for beach holidays, and a set of clothes I wear around the house.

set off

To say one has to 'set off' indicates that one is ready to leave. It's often used in the context of a holiday or road trip, referring to the time that an individual or group must depart, or hopes to depart in order to make best use of their time or stick to a schedule.

We need to set off before 5am in order to beat the traffic.

Well, we'd love to stay and chat, but I think it's time we set off so we don't miss our flight.

We should set off before dawn if we want to reach our destination before lunchtime.

I promised my mum I'd buy her some groceries. I should set off now, because the supermarket is about to close.

V



Vanish

1. disappear suddenly and completely.

“vanish” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+vanish+meaning> (05 October, 2021)

To vanish

My negative thoughts vanish whenever I wake to see a sunny, warm, spring morning.

The magician appeared on the stage, then a huge puff of smoke obscured him. When the smoke faded, the magician had vanished. He was nowhere to be seen.

I predict that an unidentified flying object will appear in the sky, then vanish moments later.

Visit

1. to pay a call on as an act of friendship or courtesy
2. to reside with temporarily as a guest
3. to go to see or stay at (a place) for a particular purpose (such as business or sightseeing)

“visit” Oxford Languages. <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/visit> (05 October, 2021)

Visit someone / some place

I visit my friends when they're going through a hard time.

The girl went to the hospital to visit her sick grandfather.

The couple will travel to Thailand and visit some temples, and other popular tourist spots.

Noun: Visit

Our visit was interrupted by a terrifying elephant stampede.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

going through a hard time

To 'go through a hard time' is to experience a difficult moment or moments, and often refers to periods of exceptional difficulty that take an emotional toll. The death of a loved one or the end of a serious relationship are typically the kind of events in one's life that warrant this phrase, and therefore is commonly used alongside sentiments of support and care for the affected individual.

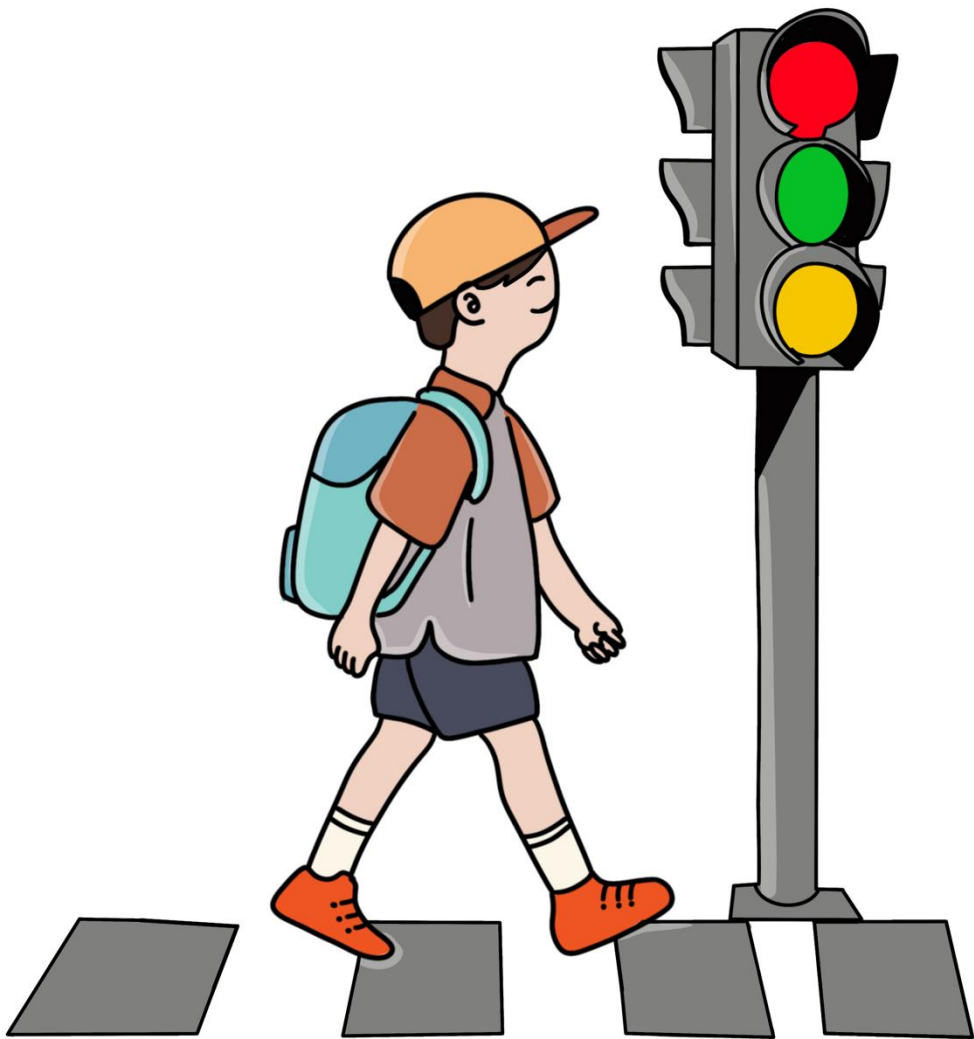
Don't mind my 3 year old son. He's going through a hard time – he dropped his ice cream earlier today, and he's been devastated since.

She's been going through a hard time after the loss of her father, with whom she was very close.

The business owner has worked very hard, but lockdowns continue to threaten the health of his business, and he's going through a hard time financially and emotionally as a result.

He's been going through a hard time ever since his girlfriend told him she was leaving him for another man.

W



Wail

1. utter a wail.

“wail” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wail+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wail (due to a painful experience)

I don't really want to remember the last time I wailed in sadness.

Everyone else was quiet, but he wailed in pain.

The little girl is going to injure her arm and run back to her mother, wailing.

Noun: Wail

You could feel the pain and sadness in her long, loud wail, as she mourned the death of her husband.

Wait

1. stay where one is or delay action until a particular time or event.

“wait” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wait+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wait for someone / something

Wait up (phrasal verb) (to wait for someone who requires extra time)

Wait it out (phrasal verb) (to wait, often with the promise of something good to come as a result of being patient)

I hate waiting for food when the delay is caused by people being lazy.

He was really frustrated. He waited in the queue for over an hour and a half, for something that should've been resolved in 15 minutes.

“Hey! Wait up for me!” Jordan called out, hoping his friends wouldn’t desert him.

The couple is going to wait it out. They’re adamant they’re not leaving until a table becomes available at the restaurant.

Noun: Wait

The doctor and his assistant could not control the frustrations of the patients, many of whom had endured a long wait while in physical pain.

Walk

1. move at a regular pace by lifting and setting down each foot in turn, never having both feet off the ground at once.
2. guide, accompany, or escort (someone) on foot.

“walk” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+walk+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Walk (+ preposition of place) something

Walk somewhere

Walk with someone

Walk to someone / something

I walk on the road, under the bridge, around the oval, and through the tunnel on my daily stroll.

She walked up the mountain, then returned home to shower before going to work.

He’s going to hurt his forehead when he walks into that screen door.

Noun: Walk

The couple always stuck to their routine, consisting of an evening meal and a 20 minute walk, regardless of the weather conditions.

Wander

1. walk or move in a leisurely or aimless way.
2. move slowly away from a fixed point or place.

“wander” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wander+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wander somewhere

A lot of people wander into traffic while they’re walking, because they’re too distracted by their phone.

He had a lot of spare time, so he wandered around the town and didn’t worry about getting lost.

She’ll probably continue to wander aimlessly through life, because she has no goals or motivation.

Noun: Wanderer

The mother realised she needed to stop being so protective of her son when he came to visit the family home – he was a curious young man, a wanderer at heart, and enjoyed many adventures in remote parts of the world.

Want

1. have a desire to possess or do (something); wish for.

“want” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+want+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Want something / someone

I want to eat Mexican food tonight.

She wanted to eat chocolate, but there was none left in the fridge or in the cupboards.

He wants to take his fiancé to Paris.

Noun: Want

He couldn't finish the race, but it wasn't through lack of want or trying – his determination to succeed was evident in every race, but mechanical failures caused his early retirement.

Warm

1. make or become warm.

“warm” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+warm+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Warm something / someone (real or abstract)

I like to warm my bedsheets with a heat-pack before I go to bed.

He warmed the soup in the microwave.

She'll warm his heart with love and affection.

Noun: Warmth

It's great to feel the warmth of springtime replace the cold, chilly winds that greet us in winter.

Warn

1. inform someone in advance of a possible danger, problem, or other unpleasant situation.
2. give (someone) cautionary advice about their actions or conduct.

“warn” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Warn someone

Warn someone of something

It's important for doctors to warn patients of potential side-effects of medications.

The news reporters warned the community that a volcano was going to erupt, and they needed to evacuate the town.

She'll warn her brother not to go into her room, and she'll explain that there'll be consequences if he does.

Noun: Warning

Many people in the neighbourhood were infected with the virus because they ignored the warnings issued by health authorities.

Wash

1. clean with water and, typically, soap or detergent.
2. (of flowing water) carry (someone or something) in a particular direction.

"wash" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wash+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wash something / someone

Washed out (phrasal verb) (meaning, 1: to clean the inside of something, or 2: to be physically or mentally past one's best)

I wash my car with a hose, a bucket with soapy water, and a damp cloth.

She washed the dirty plates, then put them on the rack to dry.

She'll wash her clothes, then hang them out to dry.

Noun: Wash

I have been camping for almost a week, and haven't taken a shower or had a bath. It would be an understatement to say I need a wash.

Waste

1. use or expend carelessly, extravagantly, or to no purpose.

“waste” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+waste+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Waste something

It’s shameful that some countries waste tonnes of food while there are hungry people all around the world.

He felt guilty because he wasted a great opportunity to spend time with his son.

He’s in a difficult financial situation, and he has an addictive personality. I suspect he’ll waste all of his money on gambling.

Noun: Waste

The amount of water used to grow an almond farm in California is such a waste, because there are other more essential things the water could be used for.

Watch

1. look at or observe attentively over a period of time.
2. exercise care, caution, or restraint about.

“watch” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+watch+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Watch something / someone

Watch out for something / someone (phrasal verb) (to be watchful of someone or some situation due to a safety concern (and thus, typically be ready to help), or due to some level of suspicion that’s been aroused)

I watch nature documentaries when I’m not watching comedy movies.

The undercover detectives watched their suspect enter the convenience store.

She's going to watch the news tonight, at 8pm.

The boy on the Safari was worried.

"The gazelle needs to watch out for that lion!" he said.

Noun: Watch x2

1. "What are you doing back at the office? Who's keeping watch on our suspect?" the police chief asked the officer in charge of the undercover investigation.
2. "What time is it?"
"My watch says it's 2:10, but I think it's about 5 minutes fast, so it's probably more like five past two."

Water

1. pour or sprinkle water over (a plant or area) in order to encourage plant growth.

"water" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+water+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Water something (like a plant, or garden)

Water down (phrasal verb) (to water down a liquid is to add more water to it. To water down an abstract thing, like an idea or a policy, is to make it weaker – usually to appease someone or some group displeased with the original idea or policy)

I enjoy watering the plants in my garden.

He watered the lawn because the grass looked a little dry.

They'll stop going to that bar, because they've seen the bar staff watering down the beers.

Noun: Water

I make sure I drink water before I go for a run.

Wave

1. move one's hand to and fro in greeting or as a signal.
2. move to and fro with a swaying motion while remaining fixed to one point.

"wave" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wave+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wave to someone

I wave when saying goodbye to a friend.

The father waved to his son, who stood on stage for the school play.

The parents will wave to their teenage son when he walks through the arrivals gate at the airport.

Noun: Wave

"Are you going to give me a wave when I leave home?" the little boy asked his mother, as he prepared for his first day of school.

"Yes, of course," she replied, trying to hold back tears.

Weigh

1. find out how heavy (someone or something) is, typically using scales.
2. assess the nature or importance of, especially with a view to a decision or action.

"weigh" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+weigh+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Weigh something / someone / oneself

I see people weigh the vegetables and the meats, in the supermarket.

The man at the gym got off the treadmill, and then weighed himself on the scale.

The worker at the post office is going to have to weigh the envelope to determine how much it'll cost to send it.

Noun: Weight

I've been trying to lose weight recently, but it's not easy. The cold weather keeps me from running outside, and when I stay inside, I can't resist the temptation to eat cookies and drink hot chocolate.

Welcome

1. greet (someone arriving) in a polite or friendly way.

"welcome" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+welcome+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Welcome someone / some group (including abstract things like ideas and suggestions)

I welcome criticism of my work so I can be aware of my mistakes.

The host welcomed her guests as they arrived.

The concierge will welcome the couple to the hotel.

Noun: Welcome

When the guests arrived to the party, the hosts gave them a warm welcome.

Whine

1. give or make a long, high-pitched complaining cry or sound.

“whine” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+whine+meaning> (06
October, 2021)

Whine (about something)

I try not to whine about slow customer service, but sometimes it’s necessary to make a complaint.

The man whined about the poor weather conditions, even though there was nothing he could do about it.

The toddlers are going to whine when they’re told they won’t be going to McDonalds.

Noun: Whine

He has such a high-pitched whine. It’s very annoying.

Whip

1. beat (a person or animal) with a whip or similar instrument, especially as a punishment or to urge them on.
2. move fast or suddenly in a specified direction.

“whip” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+whip+meaning> (06
October, 2021)

Whip something / someone

I like to whip cream until it’s thick – thick enough to be called whipped cream.

He had scars and welts on his back because he was whipped for his beliefs.

She was lashed with a whip for her supposed crimes.

Noun: Whip

I think people should be careful when using a whip. An untrained person could self-inflict an injury or accidentally harm others in the vicinity.

Whirl

1. move or cause to move rapidly round and round.

“whirl” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+whirl+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Whirl (from one place to another)

The merry-go-round whirled around.

She heard a familiar voice, so she whirled around quickly to see who’d spoken.

We’ll go to the carnival and watch the fairy floss whirl around itself.

Noun: Whirlpool

My brothers and I used to swim around the outer edge of our pool to create a whirlpool, then turn around and try to swim against the current we’d just created.

Whisper

1. speak very softly using one's breath rather than one's throat, especially for the sake of secrecy.

“whisper” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+whisper+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Whisper something

It’s appropriate to whisper if you need to speak in a library, **so as not to** annoy others who are trying to focus.

She whispered the secret into her friend's ear.

The lovers will be asked to leave the movie theatre if they continue to whisper to each other. Other customers can still hear their annoying chatter.

Noun: Whisper

I could barely hear that guy. He spoke in a whisper, and his face was obscured by a mask.

Whistle

1. emit a clear, high-pitched sound by forcing breath through a small hole between one's lips or teeth.

"whistle" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+whistle+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

To whistle

I don't think people whistle when they're sad. Do they?

The happy man whistled a happy tune.

The lead singer of the Guns n Roses Tribute Band will whistle the start of the song "Patience".

Noun: Whistle

Many sports require that referees use whistles when making decisions about the rules and laws of the game, so that players can be notified of the ruling when it's made.

Wink

1. close and open one eye quickly, typically to indicate that something is a joke or a secret or as a signal of affection or greeting.
2. (of a bright object or a light) shine or flash intermittently.

“wink” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wink+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wink

Wink at someone

I wink to let someone know we’re sharing privileged knowledge that needs to be kept secret.

The guy winked at the girl to let her know he liked her. She wasn’t impressed.

A blink is a quick shutter of both eyes, whereas a wink is a slightly slower opening and closing of one eye in an effort to be suggestive or to secretly convey a piece of information.

Noun: Wink

Maybe I don’t have a lot of control over the muscles in my face – whenever I try to wink, I end up closing both of my eyes and blinking.

Wipe

1. clean or dry (something) by rubbing with a cloth, a piece of paper, or one's hand.

“wipe” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wipe+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wipe something

Wipe out (phrasal verb x2) (meaning 1: to eliminate completely. 2: to be exhausted)

She wipes breadcrumbs off the bench.

I wiped pulled pork off my lunch plate using a corn chip.

He'll grab a cloth and wipe the dust off the mantle.

He's done so much work today, and he's **barely** slept in the last 2 days. He's completely wiped out.

Noun: Wiper

The long, thin, black rubber prongs that are attached to a car and glide over the windscreen to remove raindrops are called windscreen wipers.

Wish

1. feel or express a strong desire or hope for something that cannot or probably will not happen.
2. want to do something.

"wish" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wish+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wish something for someone (including oneself)

Wish someone something

I wish I could drink many more litres of water before needing to go to the bathroom.

The birthday girl blew out the candles on her cake. She told her friends she wished it was her birthday every day of the year.

He wishes he could travel back in time and avoid making the mistakes he made.

The little boy will wish for a magical potion that can turn him into an adult.

Noun: Wish

Someone at a birthday party usually reminds the birthday boy, or birthday girl, to make a wish before cutting the cake.

Wobble

1. move or cause to move unsteadily from side to side.

“wobble” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wobble+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

To wobble

I start to wobble when I don't have enough oxygen getting to my brain.

The table wobbled because two of the legs were shorter than the others.

Toddlers wobble on their bikes during the early stages of learning to ride.

Noun: Wobble

“Let's go to another diner,” John said to his girlfriend, Sally.

“Why?” she said.

“This chair has a wobble.”

“So get another chair.”

“There's no other chairs available.”

“Is it really such a big problem that your chair has a little wobble?”

“If I can't sit in a stable chair I won't enjoy my meal.”

Sally looked at him like looking at a child.

“Here,” she said, grabbing a napkin from the table. She folded it end over and end then placed it under the short leg of his chair, keeping it in place and solving the problem.

“Oh, they don't serve bacon and eggs here,” John remarked, having taken a moment to check the menu. “Let's get out of here.”

Later that evening

“Why are you breaking up with me?!” John cried.

Wonder

1. desire to know something; feel curious.
2. feel doubt.

“wonder” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wonder+meaning> (06
October, 2021)

Wonder something

I wonder how many robots, on average, people will own in the year 2045.

He wondered if it was possible to return the engagement ring to the store if his girlfriend rejected his marriage proposal.

She’ll continue to do great work at the office, if required, but she wonders if her boss will allow her work from her home.

Noun: Wonder

Kids like adventure films and fantasy films for the same reason adults do. The stories open a door to new worlds, landscapes, and ways of thinking that stimulate our curiosity, and provide a sense of wonder.

Work

1. be engaged in physical or mental activity in order to achieve a result; do work.
2. (of a machine or system) function, especially properly or effectively.

“work” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+work+meaning> (06
October, 2021)

Work somewhere

Work on something

Work for / with someone

Work it out (phrasal verb) (to go to whatever effort is necessary to resolve an issue)

I work wherever there’s Wi-Fi and a working computer.

She worked very hard on the project and received a lot of praise as a result.

He worked at the factory for over 10 years before becoming a supervisor.

They don't know what sort of compromise they can make to incentivise workers to get vaccinated, but they're going to have to work out a solution.

Noun: Work

If you lose your driver's license, you might need to organise public transport to get to and from your place of work.

Worry

1. feel or cause to feel anxious or troubled about actual or potential problems.

"worry" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+worry+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Worry about someone / something

I try not to worry about things that are out of my control.

She was worried about her friend – a journalist, reporting in a war zone.

He'll show the board that he's a very calm leader, and he'll explain why there's no need to worry about a potential merger.

Noun: Worry

I'm not too concerned about the lack of funding to complete the proposed shopping centre. My worry is that the development will displace thousands of native animals, which inhabit the land where the company plans to build.

Wrap

1. cover or enclose in paper or soft material.

“wrap” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wrap+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wrap something

Wrap something up (phrasal verb x2) (1: to wrap an object completely. 2: to start the process of finishing something, typically something that should have already finished)

I am not good at wrapping gifts. I always make it look messy.

She wrapped the Christmas gifts with wrapping paper.

He'll wrap his son up in a blanket to help keep him warm.

Let's wrap this up in the next 10 minutes. We've been filming for 13 hours now. The sun is going down, meaning the light is changing and therefore ruining continuity between shots, and we're starting to get tired and make costly mistakes.

Noun: Wrap

“Do we have any more wrap that can be used to cover this gift?” one elf said to another inside Santa's workshop.

“A quicker way to ask that would be: do we have any more gift-wrap?” said his more antagonistic, grumpy colleague.

“Thanks for your advice, and for wasting even more of our precious time.”

“You're welcome. Thanks for ruining Christmas by using up all the gift-wrap. Perhaps you'd also like to go to the barn and poison the reindeer, just to make sure you disappoint everyone this year.”

Wreck

1. destroy or severely damage (a structure, vehicle, or similar).
2. cause the destruction of (a ship) by sinking or breaking up.

“wreck” Oxford Languages.
<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wreck+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wreck something

I hope I don't wreck the toaster that's banging around in the back of my car while I drive.

He wrecked the kettle when he used it to boil milk. It was not his most intelligent decision.

She'll feel like the judges are trying to wreck her dream of becoming a star singer, but they've got a job to do, and they'll be brutally honest when the time comes to make their assessment.

Noun: Wreck

It was unlikely the young man would have enough time and skill to fix the car he'd crashed. Even an expert mechanic would say it was a wreck, not worth the time and money it would take to repair it.

Wrestle

1. take part in a fight, either as sport or in earnest, that involves grappling with one's opponent and trying to throw or force them to the ground.
2. struggle with a difficulty or problem.

"wrestle" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wrestle+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wrestle someone

Wrestle with something (like a difficult decision)

I am not a fan of fake reality tv, but I enjoy watching cocky egomaniacs wrestle professional athletes who are way above their skill level. It's nice to watch people with a chip on their shoulder come flying back to Earth, literally and metaphorically.

The two friends wrestled on the ground until one of them got hurt.

The tourists are about to find out that it's not a good idea to wrestle a crocodile.

Noun: Wrestle

They had a good wrestle, praised each other's skill, and agreed to meet for another training session the following Friday.

Noun: Wrestler

The fighter didn't have a perfect punching technique, but he knew that his experience as a wrestler gave him an advantage if he could bring his opponent to the floor.

Wriggle

1. twist and turn with quick writhing movements.
2. avoid (something) by devious means.

"wriggle" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+wrinkle+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Wriggle (in or out of something)

I often wriggle in my cold bed in an effort to warm up quickly.

The man wriggled out of his sleeping bag.

She'll have to wriggle like a worm, in her acting class.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

so as not to

'So as not to' is the negative of 'so as to.' In this case, (the negative) it will come between an explanation of a process, and a reason explaining that it was done specifically in that way to prevent something else.

I wait for my coffee to cool down, so as not to burn my lips on the hot liquid.

So as to, on the other hand, provides the explanation of the specific reason something was done in order that the following can occur.

He has a full health check-up at least once a year, so as to be aware of his overall health, and receive timely and necessary advice.

Here are a couple more examples of 'so as not to' and 'so as to':

Can you please close the sliding door, so as not to let any flies inside the house.

I'm holidaying on a budget. I'm going to withdraw a small amount of cash from the ATM, so as not to spend too much money on day 1.

I'm going to install solar panels on my roof, so as to save money on electricity bills.

She wiped every surface she touched, so as to remove any evidence of her crime.

barely

'Barely' is an adverb and allows the listener to know that an action has been performed to a minimal degree. It implies somewhere close to the smallest amount of the existence of whatever it is the context communicates.

He's clearly quite sick, because he's barely able to get out of bed in the morning.

The female diners were shocked to see one woman arrive to the fancy dinner party wearing barely any clothes. The male diners didn't seem to mind.

Unfortunately the man's boat capsized out at sea over 3 days ago, so there's barely any chance the rescue team will find him alive.

The cake had barely any sugar, and as a result it didn't taste very sweet.

way above

If something is 'way above' in a literal sense it means it's a considerable degree higher than another thing. To be 'way above' something in a more intangible sense might refer to a comparison of skill levels, for example; for one's ability to be 'way above' a competitor's means one possesses a lot more skill than the competitor. It's similar to 'quite a lot.'

The expertise required to use dangerous and complicated machinery is way above my pay grade. = Those who are trained to operate such machinery are paid a lot more than me.

Her level of skill and craftsmanship is way above mine.

He studied for the first time in his life, and achieved a score that was way above any of his previous scores. He was quite proud.

The price of the new mobile phone is way above what I expected it to be. It must have a lot of cool new features.

In a literal sense:

The peak of the mountain is way above the clouds.

The cat is trapped at the top of the tree, way above the roof of my home.

He can't get the cookies, because they're in a jar, way above the height he's capable of reaching.

The film crew rigged a camera at the top of the staircase, way above the ground floor, in order to get a high angle shot for their film.

a chip on his shoulder

Having 'a chip on one's shoulder' is to have an ego. We often use the expression to refer to someone who has a particularly high opinion about themselves in one particular domain. One might have 'a bit of a chip on his shoulder' if he regards his skill in a particular task to be exceptional when it isn't, and thus exhibits a characteristic overestimation of his ability. He would be humbled if challenged by someone truly proficient at this task, but like anyone with an ego, this person would be unwilling, unable or – at best – reluctant to humbly accept defeat.

He has a real chip on his shoulder. He did one short barista course and now he thinks he's expert coffeemaker. To be honest, the café down the road makes better coffees.

He's got a chip on his shoulder because his father played professional football. He somehow thinks this guarantees that he's genetically gifted and will comfortably make the professional league. Personally, I don't think he's a very good player.

"Don't mess with me. I do karate."

"I think you've got a bit of a chip on your shoulder. You've done karate for 3 weeks, and all of a sudden you think you're Chuck Norris."

She's got a bit of a chip on her shoulder because she's sold more girl scout cookies than the other girl scouts. She thinks it's due to her charm and charisma and sophisticated selling techniques, but I have a feeling she just got lucky.

come back to Earth

We often use the phrase 'to come back to Earth' in reference to other people who, for one reason or another, have had unrealistic expectations or enjoyed a period of time partaking in an unusually joyful activity. In a metaphorical sense it's akin to feeling as though one is 'on cloud nine' or 'in heaven,' thus 'high in the sky'; so, 'coming back down to Earth' means one has been humbled or shocked back to their normal reality.

I thought the excitement of the weekend music festival would last a lot longer, but when my boss handed me a demanding deadline on Monday morning, I came crashing back to Earth.

He thought life was only about video games, YouTube shorts, and Doritos, but he came to Earth with a thud when his parents forced him to do some manual labour on a farm.

The conference was full of excitement, colour, and great conversations. People learned, networked, and made a lot of friends, so it's no surprise that they came crashing back to Earth when hearing that the final day of the conference had been cancelled.

She had an amazing time shopping with friends, then came back to Earth upon realising someone in the carpark had scratched a massive scratch into the side of her car.

X



X-ray

1. photograph or examine with X-rays.

“x-ray” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+x-ray+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

X-ray (a bone)

I can't remember if a doctor has ever needed to x-ray my leg.

Doctors x-rayed his arm to determine if there was a break or a fracture of the bone.

We'll x-ray a few different parts of your body, because your collision was quite severe and we need to determine the extent of your injuries.

Noun: X-rays

If you've had a high-impact injury, you might have to attend a hospital so x-rays can show whether or not you've broken any bones.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

quite severe

'Quite' generally adds more intensity to the word that follows, and communicates the suggestion that something is done or existing completely and absolutely. It can confer a significant degree to the extent of something, like – as in this case – the degree of severity.

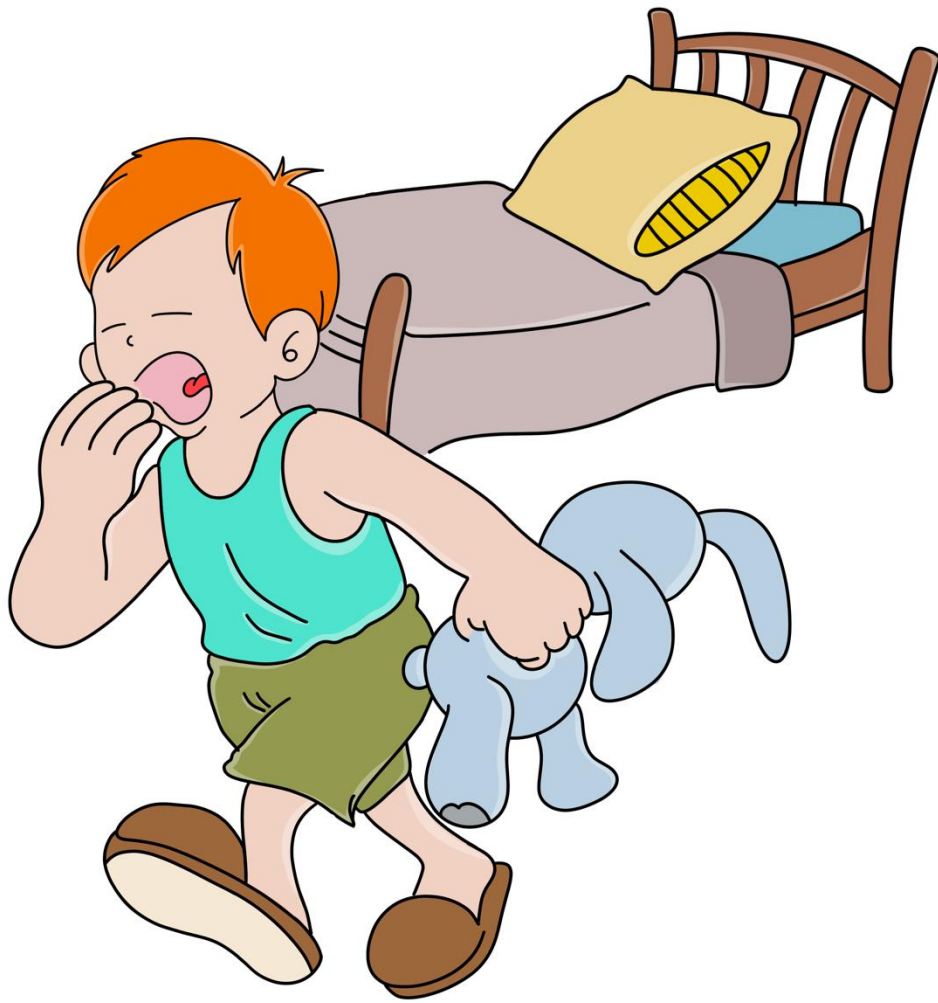
The accident didn't look so bad, but doctors told him that his internal injuries were quite severe, and he'd need an operation.

Although the planes from the local airport are small, they're quite loud when they fly directly over my home.

The owners knew they'd have to buy a muzzle for their dog, because their dog was slightly aggressive, with quite a strong bite.

The schoolboy is quite determined to make the high school football team because he narrowly missed making the team the year before.

Y



Yawn

1. involuntarily open one's mouth wide and inhale deeply due to tiredness or boredom.

"yawn" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+yawn+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Yawn (due to tiredness / boredom)

I often yawn **as soon as** I wake, or when I look outside my window in the morning.

Embarrassingly, the President's wife yawned three times during his speech. She was simply too tired to pay full attention.

He'll try to stay awake, but as soon as he starts yawning he'll start to fall asleep.

Noun: Yawn

She'll find it hard to deny she's tired if she does a big yawn.

Yell

1. shout in a loud, sharp way.

"yell" Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+yell+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Yell at someone / something

Yell out (phrasal verb) (to yell, typically to get someone's attention)

Please don't yell at me when you give instructions. I'm more likely to respond positively to people who treat me with respect.

Her voice was quite sore from yelling at her husband. She'd asked him several times to remember to put the toilet seat down.

The army sergeant is going to yell at his troops for being undisciplined.

"We'll yell out to you when your coffee is ready," the barista said to the customer.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

as soon as

We use 'as soon as' with two or more set of circumstances to convey that one set of those circumstances or events will happen immediately following the other. It can be used as a way to reassure or remind someone that we haven't forgotten about their priorities, but due to the nature of their concern our statement may be perceived as 'cold comfort' (very little comfort at all).

*"When are you going to get here?! I need you to take me to the hospital!"
"Don't worry. I'm leaving my place as soon as soon this episode of Money Heist is over."*

He had to sell his motorcycle to get some money for overseas travel, but as soon as he's feeling settled in Thailand he's going to buy a new one.

I wake up and take a shower as soon I hear my alarm go off.

As soon as she hears that one of her friends is having a baby, she gets excited and starts shopping for baby clothes to give as gifts.

Z



Zip

1. fasten with a zip.

“zip” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+zip+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Zip something

Zip something up / down (phrasal verb) (to zip something in an upwards or downwards direction)

I hate it when I try to zip my jacket, and then discover it has caught some fabric on the way up.

He unzipped his trousers to go to the bathroom, then zipped them up once he was ready to leave.

She'll zip the suitcase, then put it in a taxi.

Noun: Zip

I find it incredibly frustrating when the zip of my jacket doesn't go up or down due to faulty craftsmanship, or a problem with one side not aligning with the other.

Zoom

1. move or travel very quickly.
2. (of a camera or user) change smoothly from a long shot to a close-up or vice versa.

“zoom” Oxford Languages.

<https://www.google.com/search?q=to+zoom+meaning> (06 October, 2021)

Zoom somewhere

Zoom in / out

I look at the display screen on my camera, then I zoom in or out to frame the image just right.

The satellite technology was able to zoom in on the mountains to get a clearer picture of enemy territory.

She'll zoom in on Google Maps to get a better idea of the streets that lead to her destination.

Noun: Zoom

The zoom on a camera allows you to make images look (to some extent) closer or farther than they look to **the naked eye**.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

the naked eye

We use the term 'the naked eye' to refer to things that are seen without the assistance of visual aids, like telescopes or binoculars. There are things we know exist that either can't be seen with 'the naked eye' or require a change in perception, via a change of framing, positioning, or the use of a visual aid.

The tiniest germs and microbes can't be seen with the naked eye; they can only be seen through a microscope.

You can't see the finer details of stars and planets with the naked eye, but I wonder if it's possible with a good telescope.

Humans can't see radio waves or ultraviolet light with the naked eye, but we know – through the use of other scientific tools – that these things exist.

She knew that on a clear day, from the terrace of her tiny apartment in Spain, she could see Morocco with the naked eye.

HIGHLIGHTED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS INDEX

LETTER SECTION	HIGHLIGHTED	PAGE #
A	with open arms	26
	in good shape	26
	downright scary	26/27
	as we speak	27
	third straight race	27
	steps put in place	28
B	goofing around	53
	about to	53
	on the condition	53/54
	in the not too distant future	54
C	out of your league	90
	to complain about	90/91
	will go towards	91
	his mind is made up	91/92
	by the end	92/93
	speak up	93
in an effort to	93/94	
D	A dirty trick	119
	get the most out of	119/120
	If I could, I would	120
	gone to bed	120/121
E	rather than	137
	to try new things	137
	as such	137/138
	go on a diet	138
F	both parties	158
	put on	158-161
	an unusually large amount	161
	an illegal (overtaking)	
	move	161/162
although	162	
G	gather his thoughts	173
	back together	173/174
	hard enough to	174
H	through her charity work	189
	all over	189/190
I	simply ignoring him	206
	basically	206
	sent out	206/207
J	out of breath	214
K	skill and precision	221
	coming loose	221/222
L	catch up with	236
	considerably	236/237
	more like	237
M	beat of my own drum	254
	such that it	254/255
	get to (a place)	255

	apart from	255/256
N	least suspects	263
	up to date	263/264
O	en route	274
	even though	274/275
	never even	275
P	having to	311
	used to	311/312
	these days	312/313
	I can tell	313
	altogether	313/314
	follow through	314/315
hold themselves to a standard	315	
Q	indeed	319
R	don't mind	350
	it's been ages	350/351
	not interested in him	351
	yet another	351/352
	DIY	352
	to say the least	352/353
before my very eyes	353	
S	for that matter	408
	that is to say	408/409
	Why is it that...?	409
	their respective owners	409
	of his own	410
	doesn't seem too fussed	410/411
	tends to be	411
	I can't help but	411/412
	little did she know	412
	go for my daily walk	412/413
	anyway	413/414
out of respect for	414	
throw him a party	414/415	
T	over the course of	442
	in the name of	442/443
	want the best for you	443
	primarily because	443/444
	in a matter of seconds	444
	in all likelihood	445
	let alone...	445
	make it on the night	446
U	set of clothes	452
	set off	
V	going through a hard time	465
W	so as not to	478
	barely	478/479
	way above	479
	a chip on his shoulder	480/481
X	quite severe	484
Y	as soon as	488
Z	the naked eye	492

Acknowledgements

Thank you to everyone who supported the creation of this book. Whether your support came directly through encouragement or advice, or indirectly through unrelated conversation, your actions and/or presence has helped keep me on the right track and guide it to completion.

Thanks to Huỳnh Thị Kim Lại (Moony) for the illustrations. The pictures from A to Z depict the verbs: Arrest, Bake, Camp, Decorate, Exercise, Frighten, Grab, Hunt, Invent, Jog, Kick, Lock, Measure, Need, Open, Paint, Queue, Relax, Shave, Travel, Visit, Unbuckle, Walk, X-ray, Yawn, Zip.

Read and Listen

Regular English Verbs and Matching Nouns
with Bonus grammar, phrases, idioms and expressions

Glen Martyn Hubbard, 2022 ©

